

Can U.S. Venture Capital Contracts Be Transplanted into Europe? Systematic Evidence from Germany and Italy

Law Working Paper N° 848/2025

March 2026

Luca Enriques

Università Bocconi, European Banking Institute and ECGI

Casimiro Antonio Nigro

University of Leeds

Tobias H. Tröger

Goethe University CAS LawFin, SAFE and ECGI

© Luca Enriques, Casimiro Antonio Nigro and Tobias H. Tröger 2026. All rights reserved. Short sections of text, not to exceed two paragraphs, may be quoted without explicit permission provided that full credit, including © notice, is given to the source.

This paper can be downloaded without charge from:
<https://www.ecgi.global/publications/working-papers>

ECGI Working Paper Series in Law

Can U.S. Venture Capital Contracts Be Transplanted into Europe? Systematic Evidence from Germany and Italy

Working Paper N° 848/2025
March 2026

Luca Enriques
Casimiro Antonio Nigro
Tobias H. Tröger

Abstract

A vast literature has examined the contractual technology that venture capital (VC) funds and entrepreneurs deploy in the U.S. to define an agency cost-minimizing structure of their relationship, leading many to conclude that U.S. VC contracts are the best real-world solution to the challenges bedeviling the financing of high-tech innovative startups and a model for VC transactional practice worldwide. Yet, whether VC funds and entrepreneurs can replicate the allocation of cash-flow and control rights resulting from U.S. VC contracts in non-U.S. jurisdictions has long been open to discussion. Research by financial economists and legal scholars has reached diverging conclusions. The existing literature exhibits three limitations, though. First, it has generally investigated at most only how a subset of the individual components of U.S. VC contracts fare under non-U.S. corporate laws. Second, it has typically considered the law on the books as opposed to the law in action. Third, it has relied on a loose definition of what qualifies as an effective substitute. This article examines how U.S. VC contracts fare under the corporate law regimes in force in two important European jurisdictions: Germany and Italy. It does so by taking a new approach to the matter. First, it considers the entire set of arrangements included in U.S. VC contracts rather than a sample. Second, it assesses the legality of those arrangements in the light of the applicable corporate law in action rather than the law on the books. Third, in assessing arrangements that deviate from U.S. private ordering solutions due to restrictive corporate law, it focuses on contract functionality rather than contract design. The results of the inquiry are straightforward: German and Italian corporate laws literally crash contracting parties' ambition to transplant U.S. VC contracts into their own jurisdictions and only allow for alternative arrangements that, if available at all, are costlier and/or less functional.

Keywords: Comparative Corporate Governance; Comparative Corporate Law; Entrepreneurship;

JEL Classification: G38; K22; L26

Luca Enriques

Università Bocconi, European Banking Institute and ECGI
Professor of Business Law
Università Bocconi
e-mail: luca.enriques@unibocconi.it

Casimiro Antonio Nigro

University of Leeds
Business Law Lecturer
e-mail: casimironigro@gmail.com



LawFin Working Paper No. 58

Can U.S. Venture Capital Contracts Be Transplanted into Europe? Systematic Evidence from Germany and Italy

Luca Enriques | Casimiro A. Nigro | Tobias H. Tröger

Can U.S. Venture Capital Contracts Be Transplanted into Europe? Systematic Evidence from Germany and Italy

Luca Enriques (*)
Casimiro A. Nigro (**)
Tobias H. Tröger (***)

March 2026

Abstract

A vast literature has examined the contractual technology that venture capital (VC) funds and entrepreneurs deploy in the U.S. to define an agency cost-minimizing structure of their relationship, leading many to conclude that U.S. VC contracts are the best real-world solution to the challenges bedeviling the financing of high-tech innovative startups and a model for VC transactional practice worldwide.

Yet, whether VC funds and entrepreneurs can replicate the allocation of cash-flow and control rights resulting from U.S. VC contracts in non-U.S. jurisdictions has long been open to discussion. Research by financial economists and legal scholars has reached diverging conclusions. The existing literature exhibits three limitations, though. First, it has generally investigated at most only how a subset of the individual components of U.S. VC contracts fare under non-U.S. corporate laws. Second, it has typically considered the law on the books as opposed to the law in action. Third, it has relied on a loose definition of what qualifies as an effective substitute.

This article examines how U.S. VC contracts fare under the corporate law regimes in force in two important European jurisdictions: Germany and Italy. It does so by taking a new approach to the matter. First, it considers the entire set of arrangements included in U.S. VC contracts rather than a sample. Second, it assesses the legality of those arrangements in the light of the applicable corporate law in action rather than the law on the books. Third, in assessing arrangements that deviate from U.S. private ordering solutions due to restrictive corporate law, it focuses on contract functionality rather than contract design. The results of the inquiry are straightforward: German and Italian corporate laws literally crash contracting parties' ambition to transplant U.S. VC contracts into their own jurisdictions and only allow for alternative arrangements that, if available at all, are costlier and/or less functional.

Keywords: Comparative Corporate Governance; Comparative Corporate Law; Entrepreneurship; Financial Contracting; Private ordering; Start-ups; Venture Capital.

JEL Classification: G38; K22; L26.

(*) Bocconi University, Department of Legal Studies; ECGI; EBI (luca.enriques@unibocconi.it).

(**) Leeds University, Law School; Goethe Universität, CAS on the Foundations of Law and Finance; LUISS “Guido Carli” (c.a.nigro@leeds.ac.uk).

(***) Goethe Universität, CAS on the Foundations of Law and Finance, the Leibniz Institute for Financial Research SAFE; ECGI; EBI (troeger@jur.uni-frankfurt.de).

We acknowledge our debt to the many people whose comments have greatly improved the output of this project in one of the companion papers. Casimiro Nigro and Tobias Tröger gratefully acknowledge research support from the Leibniz Institute for Financial Research SAFE and the Center for Advanced Studies Foundations of Law and Finance funded by the German Research Foundation (Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, DFG)—Project FOR 2774.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

I.	INTRODUCTION	2
II.	SETTING THE STAGE	7
	A. The Framework.....	7
	B. Delaware Corporate Law	10
	C. German and Italian Corporate Laws	12
III.	VC CONTRACTING IN GERMANY AND ITALY	17
	A. <i>How We Identify the Law in Action</i>	18
	B. <i>Overview of Our Results</i>	20
	C. <i>How Contractual Transplants Are Rejected</i>	21
	1. Financial Structure.....	21
	i. Staged Financing.....	21
	ii. Conversion Rights.....	22
	iii. Liquidation Preferences	26
	iv. Automatic and Cumulative Dividends	31
	v. Anti-dilution Provisions.....	34
	vi. Pay to Play Provisions	41
	vii. Equity-based Compensation Schemes	46
	2. Governance.....	50
	i. Directors' Appointment and Removal	51
	ii. Protective Provisions	54
	iii. Corporate Opportunity Waivers.....	57
	iv. Share Transfer Restrictions.....	59
	v. Pre-emptive Rights	61
	vi. Bad Leaver Provisions	61
	3. Exit.....	68
	i. Provisions Related to Trade Sales, including Drag-along Rights Provisions	68
	ii. Redemption Rights	75
IV.	CONCLUSION.....	78

I. INTRODUCTION

Economic theory has long established that innovation, rather than other factors of production, leads to long-term growth.¹ Empirical evidence shows that venture capital (“VC”) has built a solid track record for supporting high-tech firms and, thus, long-lasting economic growth.² Yet, to build a vibrant VC market, private players—namely, VC funds (“VCFs”)³ and entrepreneurs—and policymakers must address the various frictions that stand in the way of

¹ Robert M. Solow, *A Contribution to The Theory of Economic Growth*, 70 Q.J. ECON. 65 (1956).

² See, e.g., Samuel Kortum & Josh Lerner, *Assessing the Contribution of Venture Capital to Innovation*, 31 RAND J. ECON. 674 (2000); and Sampsa Samila & Olav Sorenson, *Venture Capital, Entrepreneurship, and Economic Growth*, 93 REV. ECON. & STAT. 338 (2011).

³ Our focus on such funds rather than on other forms of VC, such as corporate VC, is justified by VCFs’ predominance in the market for entrepreneurial finance. See, e.g., Thomas J. Chemmanur & Paolo Fulghieri, *Entrepreneurial Finance and Innovation: An Introduction and Agenda for Future Research*, 27 REV. FIN. STUD. 1, 4 (2014) (offering an overview of the players active in the market for early-stage entrepreneurial finance and stressing VCF’s preponderance).

innovative startups' access to finance.⁴ Consistent with this assessment, financial economists and legal scholars have long theorized the pivotal role of private ordering and corporate law's flexibility in reducing the agency costs of the relationship between VCFs and entrepreneurs and allocating risks efficiently.⁵

Taking advantage of Delaware law's enabling nature,⁶ VCFs and entrepreneurs have developed a complex contractual framework that, over time, has evolved as the best real-world solution to the problems bedeviling the financing of innovative firms.⁷ It has thus emerged as the reference point for the transactional practice of VC financing worldwide.⁸

A sizeable scholarly debate has developed about whether VCFs and entrepreneurs can transplant U.S. VC contracts⁹ into non-U.S. jurisdictions. Part of the literature has answered that question in the negative. An oft-cited law and finance study concluded that because of the rigidity of the local legal regimes and less effective enforcement, civil law jurisdictions may hinder the transplant of U.S. VC contracts into non-U.S. jurisdictions.¹⁰ The authors observe that "[contracting p]arties cannot easily undo deficiencies of the law through private transactions if the legal system does not enforce certain types of contracts" and hint at the difficulty of devising contractual solutions that may supplant inadequate legal frameworks.¹¹ Similarly, some legal scholars have concluded that many non-U.S. corporate law regimes

⁴ See generally, e.g., Josh Lerner, *The Governance of New Firms*, in FINANCING INNOVATION IN THE UNITED STATES, 1870 TO THE PRESENT 405, 406–09 (Naomi R. Lamoreaux & Kenneth L. Sokoloff eds., 2005).

⁵ Financial economists were the first to model the optimal private ordering solutions. See, e.g., Thomas Hellmann, *The Allocation of Control Rights in Venture Capital Contracts*, 29 RAND J. ECON. 57 (1998); Klaus M. Schmidt, *Convertible Securities and Venture Capital Finance*, 58 J. FIN. 1139 (2003) (discussing the function and value of convertible securities in addressing information asymmetries and moral hazard problems). Legal scholars then followed on that path. See Michael Klausner & Kate Litvak, *What Economists Have Taught Us about Venture Capital Contracting*, in BRIDGING THE ENTREPRENEURIAL FINANCING GAP: LINKING GOVERNANCE WITH REGULATORY POLICY 54, 59 (Michael Whincop ed., 2001) (discussing the importance of private ordering in defining the governance of VCFs and VC-backed firms); Ronald J. Gilson, *Engineering a Venture Capital Market: Lessons from the American Experience*, 55 STAN. L. REV. 1067, 1093 (2003) (same). The scholarly emphasis on the role of private ordering in the context of VC investing led several law and finance scholars to stress that devising and enforcing the private ordering solutions shaping VC-backed firms requires the applicable corporate law regime to exhibit one crucial property: flexibility. See, e.g., John Armour, *Law, Finance, and Innovation*, in VENTURE CAPITAL CONTRACTING AND THE VALUATION OF HIGH-TECHNOLOGY FIRMS 133, 149–50 (Joseph A. McCahery & Luc Renneboog eds., 2005) (discussing how the flexibility of the legal regime for private companies may facilitate the adoption of U.S. VC contracts); Joseph A. McCahery & Erik P.M. Vermeulen, *Business Organization Law and Venture Capital*, in *id.*, 162, 167–69 (discussing the importance of a flexible business organization law for the purposes of drafting efficient VC contracts from a transaction costs perspective). Most recently, see Paolo Giudici & Peter Agstner, *Startups and Company Law: The Competitive Pressure of Delaware on Italy (and Europe?)*, 20 EUR. BUS. ORG. L. REV. 597, 606–07 (2019) (generally stressing the importance of corporate law's flexibility for VC contracting).

⁶ See *infra* Part II.B.

⁷ See *infra* text corresponding to notes 106–107.

⁸ See *infra* text corresponding to note 108.

⁹ We use the term "VC contracts" to refer to the set of formally distinct but functionally and operationally intertwined contracts that govern the business relationship between shareholders, which in our context are VCFs and entrepreneurs. These contracts include not only the terms of the firm's charter but also ancillary contracts, such as shareholder agreements. This terminology is similar to that used by financial economists, who deploy the same term to refer to the certificate of incorporation, the charter, the share purchase agreement, and various shareholder agreements. See, e.g., Ola Bengtsson, *Financial Contracting in the U.S.*, in THE OXFORD HANDBOOK OF VENTURE CAPITAL 478, 486 (Douglas J. Cumming ed., 2014).

¹⁰ Josh Lerner & Antoinette Schoar, *Does Legal Enforcement Affect Financial Transactions? The Contractual Channel in Private Equity*, 120 Q.J. ECON. 223, 224 (2005). See also Isin Guler & Mauro F. Guillén, *Institutions and the Internationalization of U.S. Venture Capital Firms*, 41 J. INT'L BUS. STUD. 185, 189–90 (2010) (making a similar point).

¹¹ Lerner & Schoar, *supra* note 10, at 224.

hinder the adoption of critical components of the contractual framework governing VC deals in the U.S. or equally effective alternatives.¹²

Other scholars have expressed more benign views on the matter, though. An influential article concluded that legal regimes, including corporate laws, do not impede the transplant of U.S. VC contracts, because VCFs, particularly the most experienced ones, can replicate the optimal allocation of control and cash-flow rights under any legal regime.¹³ Some legal scholars focusing on the impact of German and Italian corporate laws on the transplant of U.S. VC contracts have concluded that these regimes establish no real obstacles to engineering contractual frameworks that may be as effective and thus as valuable as U.S. VC contracts.¹⁴

Practitioners worldwide have taken an ambiguous stance on the matter: they have regularly attempted to minimize the adverse impact of applicable local corporate laws on VC contracts' functionality but also highlighted the legal risks associated with transplanting individual components of U.S. VC contracts.¹⁵

¹² For E.U. jurisdictions, see, e.g., Theodor Baums & Matthias Möller, *Venture Capital: U.S.-amerikanisches Modell und deutsches Aktienrecht*, in CORPORATIONS, CAPITAL MARKETS, AND BUSINESS IN THE LAW. *LIBER AMICORUM* RICHARD M. BUXBAUM 33 (Theodor Baums et al. eds., 2000) (pointing out that the rigidities of the German legal regime for joint stock companies stand in the way of the adoption of U.S. VC contracts); Giudici & Agstner, *supra* note 5, at 617–24 (laying bare the enforceability risk of some key U.S.-style provisions under Italian corporate law); Peter Agstner et al., *Business Angels, Venture Capital e la nuova s.r.l.*, 8 RIVISTA ORIZZONTI DEL DIRITTO COMMERCIALE 353 (2020) (acknowledging that, according to the current interpretation of Italian corporate law, conversion rights, liquidation preferences, anti-dilution provisions, and drag-along rights provisions could be null and void); Casimiro A. Nigro & Luca Enriques, *Venture Capital e diritto societario: un rapporto difficile*, 20 ANALISI GIURIDICA DELL'ECONOMIA 149 (2021) (discussing how Italian corporate law in action stands in the way of adopting and using nearly all the components of U.S. VC contracts). As to China, see Lin Lin, *VENTURE CAPITAL LAW IN CHINA* 143–75 (2020) (discussing convertible preferred shares and liquidation preferences under Chinese corporate law); *id.*, *Contractual Innovation in China's Venture Capital Market*, 21 EUR. BUS. ORG. L. REV. 101, 115–20 (2020) (same). As to Korea, see Narae Lee, *Accommodating Venture Capital Investors' Contractual Rights in the Korean Corporate Law*, 23 J. KOREAN L. 1 (2024) (spotlighting the uncertain legality of key contractual terms in VC deals under Korean corporate law). See also Alvaro Pereira, *The Law of Contingent Control in Venture Capital*, 2023 COLUM. BUS. L. REV. 1, 16–20 (shedding light on the legal obstacles to adopting contingent control mechanisms, convertible preferred shares, and shares with multiple voting rights in various jurisdictions).

¹³ See Steven N. Kaplan et al., *How Do Legal Differences and Experience Affect Financial Contracting*, 16 J. FIN. INTERMEDIATION 273 (2007).

¹⁴ THILO KUNTZ, *GESTALTUNG VON KAPITALGESELLSCHAFTEN ZWISCHEN FREIHEIT UND ZWANG: VENTURE CAPITAL IN DEUTSCHLAND UND DEN USA* 524–758 (2016) (analyzing extensively how German corporate law affects the adoption of the most critical contractual solutions found in U.S. VC contracts and concluding—based on a distinct interpretation of the law that broadly expands the room for private ordering and deviates from courts' likely stance—that German corporate law does not necessarily prevent the transplant of U.S. VC contractual arrangements); Bruna Szego, *Finanziare l'innovazione: il Venture Capital dopo la riforma del diritto societario*, 103 RIVISTA DI DIRITTO COMMERCIALE 821 (2005) (discussing whether the 2003 reform of Italian corporate law expanded the room for importing a few contractual solutions typically found in VC deals and concluding that, relative to the previous corporate law regime, things significantly improved); ANDREA ZANONI, *VENTURE CAPITAL E DIRITTO AZIONARIO* 127–209 (2010) (articulating a similar discussion with regard to the regime for joint-stock corporations); Paolo Giudici et al., *The Corporate Design of Investments in Startups: A European Experience*, 23 EUR. BUS. ORG. L. REV. 787 (2022) (arguing, based on empirical data, that the constraints under Italian mandatory corporate law do not rule out contracting parties' ability to design agency cost-minimizing governance structures at VC-backed firms).

¹⁵ In describing the contents of the transactional documents relating to local VC deals, practitioners have occasionally elaborated on the obstacles that domestic corporate laws might create for mimicking U.S. VC private ordering solutions. In the literature on Germany, see HANDBUCH VENTURE CAPITAL: VON DER INNOVATION ZUM BÖRSENGANG, *passim* (Wolfgang Weitnauer ed., 7th ed. 2022); Stephan Bank & Peter Möllmann, *VENTURE CAPITAL AGREEMENTS IN GERMANY: ENGLISCHSPRACHIGE VC-VERTRÄGE NACH DEUTSCHEM RECHT* (3d ed., 2023); Wolfgang Weitnauer, *Standard Form of a Termsheet for International Use – Germany*, in INTERNATIONAL VENTURE CAPITAL TERMS 375, 394 (Wolfgang Weitnauer ed., 2022) (pointing out that, due to the regime on

The existing literature has several limitations. To begin with, it has considered chiefly whether VCFs and entrepreneurs in non-U.S. jurisdictions can transplant specific components of U.S. VC contracts. In addition, it has mainly focused on how statutory corporate law affects the relevant transplants, thus potentially missing the adverse impact of corporate law in action¹⁶—that is, the set of legal rules resulting from the interpretations of authoritative legal texts consistent according with the applicable “metarules”¹⁷ as they are commonly complied with through legal gatekeepers’ intervention and/or enforced by courts. Finally, in determining whether VCFs and entrepreneurs could achieve a given result through private ordering, prior scholarship has built upon an incomplete understanding of what constitutes an equally effective substitute.

As a result, the existing literature helps us gain a general idea of what VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under a specific non-U.S. corporate law regime can achieve through private ordering, but its findings are, at best, fragmentary and inconclusive. A comprehensive and reliable map of what VCFs and entrepreneurs seeking to design agency cost-minimizing governance structures and optimal risk allocations can achieve under non-U.S. corporate law regimes has not been drawn yet.

The hypothesis that corporate law’s relative rigidity or flexibility affects VC contracting and investments follows intuitively from general contracting and transaction cost theories.¹⁸ Rigid corporate law in action can create significant constraints on (VC) transactional practice. That is especially the case when it inhibits not only the arrangements that are widely used in the U.S. but also *functionally equivalent* ones. When this occurs, corporate law also precludes any contractual mechanism that would exhibit a distinct legal form yet produce identical economic effects, because it would allow contracting parties to achieve the *same practical result* as the U.S. template *at no higher cost*.¹⁹ The implication is that VCFs and entrepreneurs must content themselves with less effective alternative arrangements: that is, contractual solutions that—identical or similar as they may be to their U.S. counterparts—aspire but fail

capital maintenance, courts may invalidate not the contractual provision stipulating the VCF’s redemption right, but the transaction whereby the VCF has its shares redeemed if the price paid to it exceeds fair value, and thus suggesting the inclusion of a severability clause stipulating that, in that case, the VCF shall have the right to receive the lowest price possible). See also Marco Gardina & Giulia Pairona, *Standard Form of a Termsheet for International Use – Italy*, in *id.* 416, 427 (pointing out that general provisions of Italian corporate law may affect the enforceability of, *inter alia*, liquidation preference and drag-along rights provisions).

¹⁶ For the classic distinction between “law on the books” and “law in action,” see Roscoe Pound, *Law on the Books and Law in Action*, 44 AM. L. REV. 12 (1910).

¹⁷ Pierre Legrand, *European Legal Systems Are Not Converging*, 45 INT’L & COMP. L.Q. 52, 57 (1996) (defining metarules as “the rules developed by a legal system (or, more accurately, by the actors within a legal system) in order to help it manage its body of rules”).

¹⁸ See *infra* II. A. See also Luca Enriques et al., *Venture Capital Contracting as Bargaining in the Shadow of Corporate Law Constraints* 12–14 (Eur. Corp. Governance Inst., Law Working Paper No. 833/2025, 2025), <https://ssrn.com/abstract=5183235> (explaining the interdependence of corporate law flexibility, optimal contracting, VC financing options, and, ultimately, innovation and growth).

¹⁹ We restrict the notion of functional equivalence to the case of equal (cost-)effectiveness from the contracting parties’ perspective. For instance, specification costs *ex ante* and enforcement costs *ex post* can limit the value created by a contract. See Benjamin E. Hermalin et al., *Contract Law*, in THE HANDBOOK OF LAW AND ECONOMICS, 3, 7–12 (A. Mitchell Polinsky & Steven Shavell eds., 2007). Variations in unenforceability risk and/or enforcement costs then imply that two alternative contractual solutions do not have the same value. *Cf.*, also for references, Kevin E. Davis, *Contracts as Technology*, 88 N.Y.U. L. REV. 83, 88–103 (2013) (discussing how a variety of factors, including legal uncertainty and hence unenforceability risk, affect contract value). For details, see Enriques et al., *supra* note 18, at 14–15.

to achieve the same practical result or do so at a higher cost (hereinafter, “inferior alternative arrangements”).²⁰

In this article, we examine whether U.S. VC contracts work outside their jurisdiction of origin by examining whether they can be transplanted into Germany and Italy. We discuss how the corporate laws in action in these jurisdictions affect contracting parties’ ambition to transplant U.S. VC contracts’ functionality. Importantly, rather than examining whether German and Italian corporate laws allow for the transplant of the *provisions* included in U.S. VC contracts, we focus on whether they permit the allocation of cash-flow and control rights achievable through contracting under U.S. corporate law—irrespective of contract design. We provide systematic evidence that German and Italian corporate laws are inhospitable to such transplants. A few, partly immaterial exceptions aside, contracting parties regularly face insurmountable legal obstacles in allocating cash-flow and control rights based on the U.S. model. Casual observation of real-world Italian VC contracts, the standard contractual templates that leading German VC handbooks provide, discussions with VC lawyers, and other available empirical evidence confirm that transactional practice is consistent with the constraints we pinpoint.

This study is the first to show how the entire set of private ordering solutions shaping U.S. VC contracts fares under the corporate law of specific non-U.S. jurisdictions. Its findings have important lessons for policymakers aiming to enhance VC markets.²¹ While we focus on two individual non-U.S. jurisdictions, our overall discussion is relevant far beyond Germany and Italy. Its value extends to all jurisdictions where rigid corporate law compels VCFs and entrepreneurs to bargain within a legal environment that is ultimately hostile to private ordering. In a fourth paper, two of us speculate about the factors that may explain the “*über-*mandatory structure of Italian corporate law”—as we term it—, articulating, again, reflections that may well have value across many other jurisdictions.²²

The remainder of this paper unfolds as follows. In Part II, we set the stage for our discussion. We begin by sketching the fundamental building blocks of our theoretical framework. We then explain that Delaware corporate law nearly embodies the legal framework we envision as ideal for VC contracting and has thus served as a fertile ground for developing the presumptively efficient U.S. VC contracts we know today. We finally explain that the German and Italian corporate laws, by contrast, depart in crucial respects from that ideal legal framework. Having put our discussion in context, in Part III, we examine how German and Italian corporate laws respond to VCFs’ and entrepreneurs’ attempts to allocate cash-flow and control rights as they see fit. First, we account for how, in strict adherence to the interpretation practices of German and Italian corporate laws, we determine the legal parameter against which we assess the validity of the individual components of U.S. VC contracts. Second, we provide an overview of our results to help the reader access the bigger picture and better navigate the intricacies of VC contracting under German and Italian corporate laws. Third, we discuss how VCFs and entrepreneurs fare when attempting to transplant the clauses of U.S. VC contracts in Germany and Italy. Although we are aware that U.S. transactional practice does not put equal weight on every clause we discuss, we provide the whole picture to prove that we are not

²⁰ See Enriques et al., *supra* note 18, at 15 (showing that alternative arrangements’ inferiority is not due to the transaction costs incurred in devising them, but follows from higher agency costs ensuing under less functional contractual provisions).

²¹ See Luca Enriques et al., *Mandatory Corporate Law as an Obstacle to Venture Capital Contracting in Europe: Implications for Markets and Policymaking*, in RESEARCH HANDBOOK ON THE STRUCTURE OF PRIVATE EQUITY AND VENTURE CAPITAL INVESTMENTS 23–29 (Brian J. Broughman & Elizabeth de Fontenay eds.) (forthcoming) (discussing the policy implications of our framework and analysis).

²² Luca Enriques & Casimiro A. Nigro, *No Private Ordering Please, We’re Italian*, 11 ITALIAN L.J. 139 (2025).

cherry-picking the evidence to support our hypothesis but identify general characteristics of German and Italian corporate laws that make them averse to private ordering in general and VC contracting in particular. We show that, a few negligible exceptions aside, VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under German and Italian corporate laws may use neither the U.S. clauses nor functionally equivalent ones and, instead, must resort to inferior alternative arrangements.²³ Part IV concludes.

II. SETTING THE STAGE

Before examining the extent to which German and Italian corporate laws stand in the way of VCFs' and entrepreneurs' attempts to transplant U.S. VC contracts, we put our discussion in context. First, we outline the defining characteristics of the ideal pro-VC corporate law (Section A). Next, we show that Delaware corporate law closely aligns with our pro-VC corporate law vision, thereby providing fertile ground for the development of the best real-world VC contracts (Section B). Finally, we show that, despite the reforms statutory German and Italian corporate laws have undergone, both regimes remain significantly averse to private ordering and, thus, depart in crucial respects from that ideal pro-VC corporate law we envision (Section C).

A. *The Framework*

Corporate law's rigidity or flexibility affects the private ordering exercise that VCFs and entrepreneurs undertake to mold their business relationships as they see fit. This includes VCFs' ability to rely on control rights that are often disproportionate to their equity stake.²⁴ Such ability is key for them to take minority positions in portfolio companies and hence diversify their funds' portfolios.²⁵ –Corporate law's impact on contracting parties ability to design organizational contracts that meet their needs has potentially far-reaching economic consequences as legal rigidity can prevent a Coasean bargain that would maximize joint surplus.²⁶ Market participants who understand that existing constraints prevent them from fully realizing their objectives through private ordering, even with the assistance of sophisticated lawyers, will strike VC deals only at less favorable conditions, negatively affecting VC-backed firms' financing conditions. At the margin, the increase in transaction costs will result in smaller funding rounds and in fewer startups obtaining VC, which ultimately hampers innovation and growth.²⁷

²³ See *supra* text preceding note 20.

²⁴ Steven Kaplan & Per Strömberg, *Financial Contracting Theory Meets the Real World: An Empirical Analysis of Venture Capital Contracts*, 70 REV. ECON. STUD. 281, 281 (2003).

²⁵ See Lerner & Schoar, *supra* note 10, at 226.

²⁶ See generally, Ronald H. Coase, *The Problem of Social Cost*, 3 J.L. & ECON. 1, 8 (1960). For an application to the corporate contract, see FRANK EASTERBROOK & DANIEL FISCHEL, *THE ECONOMIC STRUCTURE OF CORPORATE LAW* 1–39 (1991).

²⁷ Some legislative initiatives and contributions to the high-level policy debate aiming to revamp the competitiveness of the European economy align with our framework and recognize the importance of flexible corporate law for VC financing. See, e.g., Eur. Comm'n, *The Future of European Competitiveness – A*

Our focus is on corporate law in action²⁸ as the actual determinant of transactional practice.²⁹ For our purposes, “corporate law” comprises all legal rules that affect the relationship between VCFs and entrepreneurs.³⁰

Corporate law is optimally flexible for VC contracting if it:

- a) adopts a hands-off approach regarding the validity and/or enforceability of the private ordering solutions shaping VC deals;
- b) refrains from deploying ex post gap-filling mechanisms that restrict the exercise of contractual rights in ways inconsistent with the economic rationale of VC agreements; and
- c) tackles the abusive exercise of such rights effectively, defining abuse as opportunistic behavior that is inconsistent with the economic rationale of the VC deal.³¹

In other words, corporate law should ideally allow contracting parties to define through private ordering any aspect of the VCF-entrepreneur relationship, including the prescriptive contents of the relevant ex post gap-filling tools.³² As the sole exception, private ordering cannot authorize the abusive exercise of the rights it bestows,³³ i.e., optimally flexible corporate law does not take an unfettered laissez-faire stance, but provides well-targeted mandatory institutions to curb opportunism.

Corporate law that accommodates VC contracting helps parties minimize uncertainty about their contractual rights and obligations while reducing judicial or arbitral interference with provisions governing future contingencies.³⁴

Any country’s corporate law may depart to varying degrees from this flexible model of corporate law. It does so by prohibiting one or more private ordering solutions.³⁵ We distinguish between *absolute* and *relative* prohibitions. Absolute prohibitions prevent contracting parties from incorporating a given private ordering solution and—possibly with the support of a general anti-evasion rule or other doctrines and metarules—any functionally equivalent or inferior (but still useful) alternative arrangement.³⁶ Relative prohibitions rule out the viability of a specific private ordering solution and functionally equivalent arrangements but allow contracting parties to resort to inferior alternative arrangements.³⁷ In our companion paper, we identify the various channels through which corporate law’s mandatory rules and

Competitiveness Strategy for Europe 29–30 (Sept. 9, 2024), https://commission.europa.eu/topics/strengthening-european-competitiveness/eu-competitiveness-looking-ahead_en; René Repasi, *Draft Report with Recommendations to the Commission on the 28th Regime: A New Legal Framework for Innovative Companies*, Eur. Parl. Comm. on Legal Affs., PE773.199 (2025).

²⁸ See *supra* text accompanying note 16.

²⁹ See Enriques et al., *supra* note 18, at 12–13.

³⁰ In particular, our analysis extends to rules and standards that are formally part of contract law, because corporations have a contractual basis in both our jurisdictions (like in many others: see, e.g., Reinier Kraakman et al., *THE ANATOMY OF CORPORATE LAW* 17 (3d ed. 2017)).

³¹ Enriques et al., *supra* note 18, at 13. The point is to tackle abuse that contradicts the economic rationale of the agreement. When abuse is understood as conduct violating extra-contractual, heteronomous legal principles, the legal system may inhibit actions that neither of the parties to a contract has ever thought of as contrary to the expectations and reciprocal understandings underlying their contractual relationship.

³² *Id.* at 13.

³³ *Id.* at 13–14.

³⁴ *Id.* at 13.

³⁵ *Id.* at 13–14.

³⁶ *Id.* at 14. For the definition of “functional equivalent solutions” and “inferior alternative arrangements,” see *supra* text preceding notes 19–20, respectively.

³⁷ *Id.* at 14–15.

standards can coerce contracting parties to resort to inferior alternative arrangements.³⁸ For instance, relative prohibitions may allow for an arrangement that contracting parties would ideally include in the firm's charter³⁹ to be part only of shareholder agreements and thus hinder the arrangement's ability to bind all shareholders, present and future, which may reduce its functionality,⁴⁰ including by ruling out its self-enforcing properties.⁴¹ Corporate law can also impose restrictions on how contracting parties exercise contractual rights and/or fail to police their abusive exercise.⁴² In either case, contracting parties cannot fully rely on the tailor-made corporate contract they draft as the sole source for the allocation of cash-flow and control rights. Courts' inability to police the abusive exercise of contractual rights effectively has the same effect.⁴³

Rigid corporate laws, with their web of explicit and implicit rules and standards interpreted in line with pertinent metarules, can create heightened uncertainty as to which regime applies to a given private ordering solution.⁴⁴ They make it in fact hard to predict (i) what exact constraints mandatory corporate law imposes on private parties,⁴⁵ and (ii) how constraints that have been established may change even in the absence of any formal legal reform.⁴⁶ This in turn renders virtually any contractual arrangement litigable, thus decreasing its functionality significantly.⁴⁷

Corporate law constraints enter real-world transactional practice via two channels: (1) *ex ante*, via the intervention of legal gatekeepers—such as notaries and corporate counselors—providing transactional services, and/or (2) *ex post*, via the intervention of courts and arbitrators adjudicating the validity and/or enforceability of a private ordering solution or the exercise of the ensuing rights.⁴⁸

More prescriptive corporate law regimes restrict parties' ability to adopt U.S.-style private ordering solutions or functionally equivalent ones. They also limit their freedom to customize *ex post* gap-filling mechanisms according to their transaction's economic rationale,⁴⁹ or at least subjecting such customizations to greater legal uncertainty.⁵⁰

To be clear: we do not claim that rigid corporate law is the only legal impediment to efficient VC contracting. Fintech firms and other start-ups in regulated industries may face hostile prudential frameworks and supervisory oversight.⁵¹ Tax law may prevent efficient transactional structures.⁵² Labor law may come in the way of desirable compensation

³⁸ Enriques et al., *supra* note 18, at 15–17.

³⁹ We use the term “charter” throughout this article to include all the firm's constitutional documents: articles of incorporations, bylaws, and the charter itself, to the extent that it has a different meaning than articles of incorporations.

⁴⁰ Enriques et al., *supra* note 18, at 14.

⁴¹ *Id.*

⁴² *Id.*

⁴³ *Id.* at 14–15.

⁴⁴ *Id.* at 17–18.

⁴⁵ *Id.* at 16.

⁴⁶ *Id.*

⁴⁷ *Id.* at 18.

⁴⁸ *Id.* at 15.

⁴⁹ *Id.* at 17–18.

⁵⁰ *Id.* at 18.

⁵¹ Cf. Howell E. Jackson, *The Nature of the Fintech Firm*, 61 WASH. U. J.L. & POL'Y 9 (2020) (hinting at the trade-off that fintech firms choosing where to operate face depending on, *inter alia*, the applicable prudential framework and the quality of the supervision to which they are subject).

⁵² See, e.g., Magnus Henrekson & Tino Sanandaji, *Stock Option Taxation and Venture Capital Activity: A Cross-country Study*, 20 VENTURE CAPITAL 51 (2017) (showing taxation's impact on the use of stock-options and alternative or complementary equity-based compensation schemes).

schemes.⁵³ Our article details how corporate law can have its own distinct adverse effect on VC contracting and, ultimately, investment.⁵⁴

B. *Delaware Corporate Law*

Delaware corporate law, which has emerged as the corporate law regime governing virtually every VC-backed firm in the U.S.,⁵⁵ emanates from a statute—the Delaware General Corporation Law⁵⁶—that is enabling by design.⁵⁷

Consistent with legislators’ stance,⁵⁸ all players involved in interpreting and applying corporate law share a pro-market mindset and a firm faith in decentralized rulemaking and, therefore, obey metarules that are largely favorable to private ordering. Scholars mostly endorse a pro-private ordering approach.⁵⁹ Practitioners are similarly minded. Lawyers exploit the room for private ordering to the fullest extent possible to engineer the most effective transactional solutions.⁶⁰ U.S. public notaries, in contrast to their peers in continental Europe,⁶¹ are not subject to the obligation of verifying the legality of the transactions brought before them.⁶² Therefore, they have no concern about potential liability and ultimately no reason to offer conservative interpretations of corporate law that would constrain private ordering.

Delaware courts famously defer to private ordering,⁶³ by both upholding explicit arrangements and interpreting and enforcing them in a way that reflects their economic

⁵³ Wei Wang & Chris Yung, *Employment Protection and Venture Capital Investment: The Impact of Wrongful Discharge Laws*, 71 MANGM’T SC. 1523 (2025).

⁵⁴ Cf. Jorge Guzman, *The Direct Effect of Corporate Law on Entrepreneurship*, 40 J.L. ECON. & ORG. 45 (2023) (showing empirically that corporate law’s quality has a distinctly important effect on entrepreneurship because of its flexibility); Ofer Eldar, Jillian Grennan, & Katherine Waldock, *Common Venture Capital Investors and Startup Growth*, 37 REV. FIN. STUD. 549, 576-78 (2023) (showing that the Delaware legislator’s choice to allow for waivers of the corporate opportunity doctrine increased startups’ access to VC).

⁵⁵ Robert P. Bartlett III, *Standardization and Innovation in Venture Capital Contracting: Evidence from Startup Company Charters* (Rock Ctr. for Corp. Governance at Stanford Univ., Working Paper No. 253, 2023), <https://ssrn.com/abstract=4568695>.

⁵⁶ See Del. Code Ann. tit. 8 (Delaware General Corporation Law), <https://delcode.delaware.gov/title8/c001/> (hereinafter “DGCL”).

⁵⁷ See, generally, Edward P. Welch & Robert S. Saunders, *Freedom and Its Limits in the Delaware General Corporation Law*, 33 DEL. J. CORP. L. 845, 848–55 (2008) (recalling in detail the lawmaking process that led to the adoption of the DGCL as well as the provisions that serve as the foundations of its flexibility). The judiciary is aware of this essential property of the DGCL. Cf., e.g., *Jones Apparel Grp. v. Maxwell Shoe Co.*, 883 A.2d 837, 845 (Del. Ch. 2004) (“Delaware’s corporate statute is widely regarded as the most flexible in the nation because it leaves the parties to the corporate contract (managers and stockholders) with great leeway to structure their relations”).

⁵⁸ Welch & Saunders, *supra* note 57, at 848–55 (pointing out that the foundational provisions of the DGCL call for deference to private ordering).

⁵⁹ For an example, see Jonathan R. Macey, *Corporate Law and Corporate Governance: A Contractual Perspective*, 18 J. CORP. L. 185, 193–211 (1992) (strongly advocating a free-market approach to framing and applying corporate law).

⁶⁰ See R.J. Gilson, *Value Creation by Business Lawyers: Legal Skills and Asset Pricing*, 94 YALE L.J. 239 (1984).

⁶¹ See *infra* note 92 and accompanying text.

⁶² For details, see, e.g., CNI NOTARY INST., *2023 New York Notary Public Handbook* (Notary Pub. Publ’g 2023).

⁶³ See, most recently, also for references, Megan Wischmeier Shaner, *Privately Ordered Fiduciaries*, 28 GEO. MASON L. REV. 345, 352 (2020).

rationale.⁶⁴ Moreover, if corporate law exceptionally includes mandatory rules that constrain contracting parties' choice to include a specific private ordering solution in the firm's charter, parties can escape such constraints by inserting a clause with the same effect in a shareholder agreement.⁶⁵

As a result, Delaware's corporate law matches almost perfectly the ideal pro-VC corporate law we have described in Part II.A. It allows contracting parties to shape any aspect of their business relationship, including the prescriptive contents of the fiduciary duty of loyalty, as they see fit.⁶⁶ And by policing abuse strictly, it simultaneously ensures that parties stick to contractual promises.⁶⁷ Delaware's long-standing deference to private ordering implies that corporate law plays either a default or a minimal role in defining the structure of the business relationship.⁶⁸ Contracting parties can thus rely on private ordering to predetermine their expected behavior, which in turn confines uncertainty about the legal regime governing a specific future contingency to exceptional instances.⁶⁹ Although legal uncertainty is largely confined to isolated instances, legal disruptions are not unprecedented.⁷⁰ Such disruptions,

⁶⁴ Cf. J.C. Coffee, *The Mandatory/Enabling Balance in Corporate Law: An Essay on the Judicial Role*, 89 COLUM. L. REV. 1618, 1620 (1989) ("... to the extent that American courts have permitted greater contractual freedom in corporate law, their relative tolerance has been coupled with greater judicial activism in reading implied terms into the corporate contract ...") (emphasis added).

⁶⁵ See, e.g., *Manti Holdings, LLC v. Authentix Acquisition Co., Inc.*, 2021 WL 4165159 (Del. Sept. 13, 2021) (holding that sophisticated parties assisted by counsel and having real bargaining power can agree on the contractual solution they want and confirming the enforceability of shareholder agreement provisions waiving appraisal rights). In the literature, see generally Jill E. Fisch, *Stealth Governance: Shareholder Agreements and Private Ordering*, 99 WASH. U.L. REV. 913 (2021).

⁶⁶ For examples of private ordering solutions typical of VC deals that Delaware courts have upheld, in addition to *Manti Holdings*, *supra* note 65, see *In re Appraisal of Ford Holdings, Inc. Preferred Stock*, 698 A.2d 973 (Del. Ch. 1997) (confirming the validity of an arrangement in the firm's charter imposing a cap on the price that preferred shareholders would receive by exercising their appraisal rights). See also *infra* note 459. Delaware courts have generally interpreted VC contracts in a manner that aligns closely with the underlying contractual logic. Consequently, they have refrained from imposing fiduciary standards that might undermine the exercise of contractual rights arising from the VC agreement. The best example in this respect comes from the judicial endorsement of the "control-contingent approach," as it can be gauged from the joint reading of two notable cases, *Orban v. Field*, No. 12820, 1997 Del. Ch. LEXIS 48 (Apr. 1, 1997), and *Equity-Linked Investors, L.P. v. Adams*, 705 A.2d 1040 (Del. Ch. 1997). For details, see Jesse M. Fried & Mira Ganor, *Agency Costs of Venture Capitalist Control in Startups*, 81 N.Y.U. L. Rev. 967 (2005). More recently, the Delaware judiciary has tried to mitigate the distorting effects of the notoriously rigid *Trados* doctrine (see *In re Trados, Inc.*, 73 A.3d 17, 40–41 (Del. Ch. 2013)) and validated private ordering solutions delineating the transaction-specific prescriptive content of the duty of loyalty. See *New Enterprises Assocs. 14, L.P. v. Rich*, 2023 WL 3195927, at *129 (Del. Ch. May 2, 2023).

⁶⁷ See, e.g., Coffee, *supra* note 64, at 1620 (noting that courts' deferential approach to private ordering comes along with a strong inclination to police opportunism). For an example in the VC context, see, e.g., *Basho Technologies Holdco B LLC v. Georgetown Basho Investors LLC*, C.A. No. 11802–VCL (Del. Ch. July 6, 2018) (ordering the VCF, which failed to meet its burden under the entire fairness test, to pay damages to the entrepreneur for, amongst other things, repeatedly using its veto rights to block a critical recapitalization, ultimately forcing the company into liquidation to purchase its assets at a depressed price).

⁶⁸ Cf. Robert B. Thompson, *Why New Corporate Law Arises – Implications for the Twenty-first Century*, in *THE CORPORATE CONTRACT IN CHANGING TIMES: IS THE LAW KEEPING UP?*, 3, 3 (Steven D. Solomon & Randall S. Thomas eds., 2019) (emphasizing that, as the twenty-first century approached, "[s]tate law abandoned its prior regulatory approach and its continual change in favor of a director-centric structure with expansive room for private ordering that has remained remarkably stable.") (emphasis added).

⁶⁹ Cf., e.g., *Ascension Ins. Hldgs., LLC v. Underwood*, 2015 WL 356002 at 4 (Del. Ch. Jan. 28, 2015) ("[Delaware corporate law] respects the right of parties to freely contract and to be able to rely on the enforceability of their agreements; where Delaware's law applies, with very limited exceptions, our courts will enforce the contractual scheme that the parties have arrived at through their own self-ordering, both in recognition of a right to self-order and to promote certainty of obligations and benefits.") (emphasis added).

⁷⁰ The *Trados* doctrine (stemming from *In re Trados, Inc.*, cited *supra* note 66) is one such instance. Another such rare instance was when the Delaware courts ruled on "extreme" private ordering solutions that, in the

though, are not only infrequent but also transient, thanks to subsequent judicial or legislative interventions.⁷¹

C. German and Italian Corporate Laws

Unlike Delaware's, the German and Italian regimes depart significantly from the pro-VC corporate law ideal we outlined in Part II.A. As background, both Germany and Italy, like most jurisdictions, offer two main corporate forms: the "*Aktiengesellschaft*" ("AG") and the "*Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung*" ("GmbH")⁷² and the "*Società per azioni*" ("SPA") and the "*Società a responsabilità limitata*" ("SRL").⁷³ The AG and the SPA should serve primarily for capital raising from the public at large and thus exhibit a more rigid regulatory structure;⁷⁴ the GmbH and the SRL are meant for businesses that do not tap public capital markets and are thus subject to a more flexible regime.⁷⁵

While most German and Italian VC-backed firms incorporate as GmbHs and SRLs,⁷⁶ some incorporate as AGs and SPAs. That is because the latter corporate forms alone allow for some solutions that are particularly valuable at more mature stages when preparing for scale-

aggregate, would have had the practical effect of depriving the board of its core function. See *West Palm Beach Firefighters' Pension Fund v. Moelis & Co.*, No. 2023–0309–JTL (Del. Ch. Feb. 23, 2024) (invalidating various provisions in an unusual shareholder agreement assigning pervasive veto rights to a shareholder). Senate Bill 313, which passed in June 2024, essentially overturned the ruling by amending the DGCL to give corporations the authority to enter into stockholder agreements like those invalidated in *Moelis*. Regardless of the merits of this exceptional legislative initiative (see, e.g., Mark Lebovitch, *Soap Opera Summer: Five Predictions about Delaware Law's Response to New DGCL § 122(18)*, 15 HARV. BUS. L. REV. ONLINE 1 (2024)), the main takeaway is that Delaware seeks to uphold its friendliness towards private ordering, rain or shine.

⁷¹ With regard to *Trados*, see the *de facto* reversal in *New Enterprises Assocs.*, *supra* note 66. In the literature, cf. Lawrence A. Hamermesh, *The Policy Foundations of Delaware Corporate Law*, 106 COLUM. L. REV. 1749, 1752 (2006) (noting that "policymakers act on conventional notions of (1) enhancing flexibility to engage in private ordering; (2) deferring to case-by-case development of the law, and avoiding legislation that is prescriptive and proscriptive; (3) avoiding impairment of preexisting contractual relationships and expectations; and (4) most importantly, avoiding legislative change in the absence of clear and specific practical benefits.").

⁷² See *Aktiengesetz* [AktG] [Stock Corporation Act], Sept. 6, 1965, BUNDESGESETZBLATT I [BGBL I at 1089, last amended by Gesetz [G], Feb. 22, 2023, BGBL I no. 51, and Gesetz betreffend die Gesellschaften mit beschränkter Haftung [GmbHG] [Act on Limited Liability Companies Act], Apr. 20, 1892, REICHSGESETZBLATT [RGLB] at 477, last amended by G, Feb. 22, 2023, BGBL I no. 51 (outlining the regimes for AG and GmbH, respectively).

⁷³ See artt. 2325–2451, 2462–2483, *codice civile* (It.) (outlining the regimes for SPAs and SRLs, respectively). A special regime exists for small and medium enterprises organized as SRLs (hereinafter "SME SRLs"), which grants shareholders slightly more contractual freedom. See artt. 25–27 *Decreto Legge* 18 Oct. 2012, No. 179, converted into *Legge* 17 Dec. 2012, No. 221 (It.) (hereinafter, "*Decreto Sviluppo*"), and art. 57 *Decreto Legge* 24 Apr. 2017, No. 50, converted into *Legge* 21 June 2017, No. 96 (It.). For details, see Peter Agstner, *New Legal Forms and Rules for Italian Innovative Enterprises*, 35 EUR. BUS. L. REV. 1065 (2024).

⁷⁴ See Holger Fleischer, *A Guide to German Company Law for International Lawyers – Distinctive Features, Particularities, Idiosyncrasies*, in GERMAN AND NORDIC PERSPECTIVES ON COMPANY LAW AND CAPITAL MARKETS LAW, 3, 5 (Holger Fleischer et al. eds., 2015); and Paolo Spada, *Classi e tipi di società dopo la riforma organica in LE GRANDI OPZIONI DELLA RIFORMA DEL DIRITTO E DEL PROCESSO SOCIETARIO*, 29, 32–33 (Giorgio Cian ed., 2005).

⁷⁵ See, respectively, Fleischer, *supra* note 74, at 21 (stressing that prospective business partners looking for a flexible legal product prefer the GmbH over the AG); and Paolo Spada, *supra* note 74, at 29–30 (pointing out that "authority" dominates the regime for SPAs, while "[contractual] freedom" dominates the regime for SRLs).

⁷⁶ See, respectively, Michael Deng, *Handelsbräuche bei Wagniskapitalfinanzierung*, 50 ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR UNTERNEHMENS- UND GESELLSCHAFTSRECH 725, 734 (2021); and Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 796–97.

up rounds.⁷⁷ In addition, these forms are considered, especially in Germany, more reputable vis-à-vis customers and creditors, and within the business community at large.⁷⁸

As a result of several reforms that followed a broader continental European trend,⁷⁹ both German and Italian statutory corporate laws feature a more enabling structure today than in the past.⁸⁰ In particular, the regimes governing GmbHs and, to an even greater extent, SRLs have undergone changes intended to permit customized arrangements.⁸¹

Yet, even after these reforms, corporate law in action facilitates private ordering only to a limited extent, because national legal culture and metarules have remained unchanged. In fact, most scholars, following a long-standing methodological tradition that rejects the concept of corporate law as merely enabling, instead view it as a set of explicit and implicit rules and standards aimed to achieve overarching policy goals, such as the protection of minority shareholders, creditors, or other constituencies.⁸² Such rules and standards often derive from supposedly “foundational” statutory provisions of corporate law that apply to any firm, irrespective of its organizational form.⁸³ In some instances, they have their roots in highly

⁷⁷ In Germany, only shares of an *Aktiengesellschaft* (AG) can be listed on public markets. See Börsengesetz [BörsG] [Stock Exchange Act], July 7, 2007, BGBl. I at 1330, § 32 para. 3 no. 1 (Ger.). This rule becomes particularly relevant for ventures approaching the exit stage. At earlier stages, German VC-backed firms often seek to avoid codetermination, which applies to companies with more than 500 employees. See Gesetz über die Mitbestimmung der Arbeitnehmer [Mitbestimmungsgesetz] [Codetermination Act] (Ger.), §§ 31, 33. Firms can bypass this regime by re-incorporating as a *Societas Europaea* (SE) under Council Regulation (EC) No. 2157/2001 on the Statute for a European Company (SE), 2001 O.J. (L 294) 1. Despite their supranational form, German corporate law largely governs the organizational and financial structure of such German SEs. See Council Regulation (EC) No. 2157/2001 on the Statute for a European Company (SE), art. 9, 2001 O.J. (L 294) 1. In Italy, SPAs, unlike SRLs, can, for instance, buy back shares, albeit within limits: compare artt. 2357–2359-*quater* with art. 2474, *codice civile* (It.). A narrow exemption is provided for SME SRLs, which can buy their own shares but only to serve stock-based compensation schemes. See art. 26, comma 6, *Decreto Sviluppo*, *supra* note 73.

⁷⁸ Holger Fleischer, *Einleitung*, in MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBH-GESETZ, para. 321 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022) (pointing to the lower creditworthiness and reputation of the GmbH compared to the AG).

⁷⁹ In Germany, the main reform was the “*Gesetz zur Modernisierung des GmbH-Rechts und zur Bekämpfung von Missbräuchen*” of 23 Oct. 2008. For details, see Ulrich Noack & Michael Beurskens, *Modernising the German GmbH—Mere Window Dressing or Fundamental Redesign?*, 9 EUR. BUS. ORG. LAW REV. 97 (2006). In Italy, corporate law was reformed in 2003 with a view to making it friendlier to private ordering. See Legge 3 Oct. 2001, No. 366. For details, see Guido Ferrarini et al., *Company Law Reform in Italy: Real Progress*, 69 RABELS ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR AUSLÄNDISCHES UND INTERNATIONALES PRIVATRECHT 658 (2006). The regime for SRLs was further amended between 2012 and 2017. See *supra* note 73.

⁸⁰ German scholars portray the GmbH as a largely flexible business organization form. See, e.g., Holger Fleischer, *Contractual Freedom and Corporate Law in Germany*, in REGOLE DEL MERCATO E MERCATO DELLE REGOLE, 111, 111–12 (Giuseppe Carcano et al. eds., 2016). Italian scholars generally reach similar conclusions as regards SPAs and above all SRLs. See, e.g., Floriano D’Alessandro, *La provincia del diritto societario inderogabile (ri)determinata. Ovvero: esiste ancora il diritto societario?*, 48 RIVISTA DELLE SOCIETÀ 34, 39 (2003); GIUSEPPE ZANARONE, *LA S.R.L. A VENT’ANNI DALLA RIFORMA DEL DIRITTO SOCIETARIO* 710 (2023).

⁸¹ See, respectively, Fleischer, *supra* note 74, at 13–14 (explaining that “the modernization of GmbH ... was primarily aimed at facilitating the incorporation process and streamlining several complex and highly technical aspects of legal capital.”); and Ferrarini et al., *supra* note 79, at 661–63 (highlighting the pro-private ordering driver of the 2003 corporate law reform in Italy). See also *supra* note 73.

⁸² As to Germany, see Peter Kindler, *Grundzüge des neuen Kapitalgesellschaftsrechts – Das Gesetz zur Modernisierung des GmbH-Rechts und zur Bekämpfung von Missbräuchen (MoMiG)*, 61 NEUE JURISTISCHE WOCHENSCHRIFT [NJW] 3249 (2008) (emphasizing that the reforms aimed not only at making German corporate law more attractive for investors but also at enhancing creditor and stakeholder protection). As to Italy, see Luca Enriques, *Società per azioni*, in ENCICLOPEDIA DEL DIRITTO - ANNALI X 958, 966–77 (2017) (highlighting that, despite the changes of the statutes, rules and standards that often rest upon generic rationales regarding the protection of various corporate constituencies still shape corporate law).

⁸³ Under German corporate law, for instance, fiduciary duties are ultimately traced back to the fundamental provision in the German civil code. See § 705 para. 1 BÜRGERLICHES GESETZBUCH [BGB] [CIVIL CODE] (Ger.),

underdetermined concepts, such as “fairness” or “property.”⁸⁴ In addition, they usually have a broad scope, also thanks to anti-avoidance rules⁸⁵ that make those constructs applicable to the relevant arrangements irrespective of: (i) their legal form,⁸⁶ and (ii) whether they are located in the firm’s charter or in shareholder agreements, which, therefore, are not always a viable tool to bypass mandatory corporate law.⁸⁷

The hostility to private ordering we have described is particularly pronounced if those arrangements (1) shape the position of an investor in the firm as a hybrid between debt and equity and hence escape the bright-line conceptual distinctions that are held to inform corporate

that defines the predominant understanding of shareholders as members (“*Mitglieder*”) of an organization that pursues a common goal (“*gemeinsamer Zweck*”), leading to specific obligations whose prescriptive content is largely independent of the organizational form. For the foundational contribution, see Marcus Lutter, *Theorie der Mitgliedschaft*, 180 ARCHIV FÜR DIE CIVILISTISCHE PRAXIS (ACP) 85 (1980). Similarly, Italian corporate law regards the concept of the “corporate contract”—as laid out in art. 2247, *codice civile* (It.)—as a foundational element of corporate law that also defines the boundaries of private ordering in the corporate context. For details on how these concepts work under German and Italian corporate law, as well as examples from VC-related transactional practice, see *infra*, text accompanying notes 153 and 407–410, respectively.

⁸⁴ The specific application of the constitutional protection of private property to the benefit of shareholders illustrates how German and Italian scholars and courts conceptualize share ownership. In brief, the reasoning is that shareholders are the owners of a fraction of the firm’s cash-flow rights and any *economic* curtailment of these rights affects the *legal* guarantee of ownership rights under the relevant constitutional provisions. See Article 14 para 1 GRUNDGESETZ [GG] [BASIC LAW] (Ger.) and Article 42 of the Italian Constitution. In the literature, for Germany, see LARS KLÖHN, DAS SYSTEM DER AKTIEN- UND UMWANDLUNGSRECHTLICHEN ABFINDUNGSANSPRÜCHE 79–84 (2009) (providing an account of the jurisprudence of the German constitutional court). As to Italy, see Giuseppe B. Portale, *Tra diritto dell’impresa e metamorfosi della s.p.a. in SOCIETÀ, BANCHE E CRISI D’IMPRESA. LIBER AMICORUM* PIETRO ABBADESSA, 107, 113 (Mario Campobasso et al. eds., 2014) (briefly stressing the importance of using the concept of property and the remedial apparatus that assists it under Italian (constitutional) law to address opportunism in the corporate context); and Vincenzo Salafia, Squeeze out *statutario*, 26 SOCIETÀ 1450, 1450–1451 (2007) (explaining that squeeze out rights under takeover law lead to the expropriation of minority shareholders being forced to sell their shares). In the case law, see e.g., respectively, Bundesverfassungsgericht [BVerfG] [Federal Constitutional Court], Apr. 27, 1999, 100 ENTSCHEIDUNGEN DES BUNDESVERFASSUNGSGERICHTS [BVerfGE] 289 (asserting that the constitutional guarantee of private property encompasses the substance and the value of share ownership); and Trib. Milano [Milan Court], 1 Apr. 2008 (invalidating a drag-along rights provision for violating the constitutional law protecting private property because the lack of any reference to a minimum sale price could otherwise enable the “expropriation” of the dragged-along shareholder). For further examples, see *infra* text accompanying notes 273–276 and text preceding note 305.

⁸⁵ German law relies on an uncoded evasion doctrine that leads to the immediate application of the circumvented provision and thereby effectively voids any bypassing arrangement that contracting parties may have envisioned. See, e.g., Susanne Sieker, *UMGEHUNGSGESCHÄFTE* 8–45 (2001). Under Italian law, any contract or clause that constitutes the means for evading a mandatory provision is void. See art. 1344, *codice civile* (It.).

⁸⁶ For an example, see *infra* text accompanying notes 558–561 (discussing how Italian corporate law treats bad leaver provisions and extends that treatment to other similar arrangements).

⁸⁷ Under German law, scholars and courts explicitly acknowledge that, in several instances, resorting to shareholder agreements does not increase the leeway for private ordering. For examples, see *infra* text following note 258 and 454–456. In Italy, the widely held view is that shareholder agreements cannot serve as a tool to bypass mandatory corporate law provisions. See Corte di Cassazione [Court of Cassation], 18 July 2008, No. 15963 (It.) (concluding that private ordering in shareholder agreements can operate “within the limits set by mandatory corporate law provisions.”) (our own translation). In the literature, see, e.g., Carlo F. Giampaolino, *Clausole di trascinarsi (c.d. drag along): “equa” determinazione del valore vs. valorizzazione*, 12 RIVISTA ORIZZONTI DEL DIRITTO COMMERCIALE 230, 233 (2024) (same). In SPAs, shareholder agreements are subject to a regime that makes them an ineffective alternative anyway: the Italian Civil Code stipulates that shareholder agreements relating to SPAs are subject to a five-year time limit; and if the shareholder agreement stipulates no duration, then each of its parties may withdraw from it with a 180-day notice. See art. 2341-*bis*, *codice civile* (It.). The regime for shareholder agreements with indefinite duration also applies to shareholder agreements in SRLs, as established by case law. See Trib. Milano, 4 Jan. 2022 (It.).

law in both jurisdictions;⁸⁸ (2) may directly or indirectly harm creditors' interests;⁸⁹ (3) are supported by self-enforcing mechanisms that bypass judicial intervention and are thus often seen as inherently prone to abuse.⁹⁰

German and Italian legal gatekeepers—namely corporate counsel and notaries—and courts and arbitrators tend to share scholars' methodological canons and legal culture and, therefore, often endorse academics' prevailing views and interpretations, considering doctrinal scholarship as particularly authoritative.⁹¹ Consequently, corporate attorneys, notaries⁹² and especially courts and arbitrators tend to align with scholars' constructs when advising on deals or reviewing the validity of the relevant arrangements and the exercise of the ensuing rights.⁹³

As a result of these dynamics, German and Italian corporate laws in action depart in three crucial respects from the VC-friendly corporate law model we outlined in Part II.A. First, German and Italian corporate laws take a heavily interventionist approach to private ordering solutions.⁹⁴ Second, they marshal fiduciary standards (and other similar standards, such as good faith⁹⁵) that are not only mandatory but also hardly adapted to the specific contingencies of

⁸⁸ For an example, see *infra* text accompanying notes 146 and 153–156 (accounting for the implicit standards that, under German and Italian corporate laws, require contracting parties to design financial claims as either equity or debt—with no hybrid, fluid solution being viable).

⁸⁹ For an example, see *infra* text accompanying note 469.

⁹⁰ The judicial saga regarding so-called Russian roulette provisions that unfolded before both German and Italian courts over the last decade illustrates the heightened level of scrutiny that courts apply to innovative arrangements if they feature self-enforcing mechanisms. See, e.g., Martin Schaper, *Russian-Roulette: Möglichkeiten und Grenzen von Beendigungsklauseln in Gesellschaftsverträgen*, 67 DER BETRIEB 821 (2014); Nicola de Luca, *Una rivoltella puntata alla tempia. (A proposito di clausole della roulette russa)* 68 RIVISTA DI DIRITTO CIVILE 862 (2022).

⁹¹ See Fleischer, *supra* note 74, 7 (stressing the central role that German scholars have historically played and, to a large extent, still currently play in interpreting corporate law); Enriques & Nigro, *supra* note 22, at 11–13 (describing the Italian practice).

⁹² Both in Germany and Italy, the firm's charter has to be notarized. German notaries are under the legal obligation not to provide their services to support evidently illegal ends. Despite some variations, professional ethics, the precautionary principle, and incentives to limit professional liability will generally prompt notaries to adopt a conservative approach that curtails private ordering. Italian notaries also have a duty to refuse assistance for charters containing provisions that are against the law, which has traditionally led them to take a similarly cautious approach. The ultimate result is that German and Italian notaries—unlike their U.S. peers (see *supra* text preceding and following note 62)—have incentives to offer conservative interpretations of existing legal texts, which translates into vetoing contractual arrangements in the firm's charter that may be seen as violating corporate law or, at best, allowing them in a “revised” version that complies with applicable legal requirements at the cost of being less effective. Enriques et al., *supra* note 21, at 13.

⁹³ See Peter O. Mühlbert, *Einheit der Methodenlehre? Allgemeines Zivilrecht und Gesellschaftsrecht im Vergleich*, 214 ACP 188, 291–292 (2014) (showing the authority and influence of German doctrinal scholarship on corporate law courts' adjudication). For a recent illustration from a leading German VC advisor, see Martin Schaper, *Venture Capital in der Vertragsgestaltung*, 53 ZGR 509 (2024) (discussing some limits of VC contracting in Germany by scrutinizing doctrinal corporate law scholarship). As to Italy, see Enriques & Nigro, *supra* note 22, at 11–13.

⁹⁴ In Germany, statutory law drastically limits the leeway for private ordering in AGs. See AktG, § 23 para. 5 (stipulating that deviations from the statutory regime are allowed only “where this has been explicitly permitted.”). In the literature, see, e.g., Heribert Hirte, *Die aktienrechtliche Satzungsstrenge: Kapitalmarkt und sonstige Legitimationen versus Gestaltungsfreiheit*, in GESTALTUNGSFREIHEIT IM GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT. DEUTSCHLAND, EUROPA UND USA. 11. ZGR–SYMPOSION – 25 JAHRE ZGR, 61 (Marcus Lutter & Herbert Wiedemann eds., 1998). The law of the GmbH knows a host of doctrines that express an inherent proclivity to police private ordering and safeguard the interests of (minority) shareholders and stakeholders. See CHRISTIAN HEISTER, *GESTALTUNGSFREIHEIT IM INNENVERHÄLTNIS DER GMBH* 49–96 (2019) (surveying the doctrines that limit private ordering in the GmbH). As to Italy, see Enriques & Nigro, *supra* note 22, at 11–13.

⁹⁵ The good faith obligation is enshrined in general contract law both in Germany and Italy. See § 242 BGB (Ger.); art. 1375, *codice civile* (It.). In both German and Italian corporate law, it serves, at least to some extent, as a substitute for fiduciary standards—similar to what the literature has documented for other civil law jurisdictions.

individual cases, therefore failing to provide for ex post gap-filling tailored to VC contracts' transactional objectives.⁹⁶ Finally, because metarules grant courts broad discretion in interpreting the law, it is very difficult to predict (i) what exact constraints mandatory corporate law imposes on private parties,⁹⁷ and (ii) how constraints that have been established may change even in the absence of any formal legal reform.⁹⁸ Corporate law hence assumes an unpredictably expansive role in defining the governance of business relationships, thwarting contractual arrangements in an unanticipated manner.

See Mariana Pargendler, *Modes of Gap Filing: Good Faith and Fiduciary Duties Reconsidered*, 82 TUL. L. REV. 1315 82 (2007).

⁹⁶ The directors' fiduciary duty of loyalty illustrates this aspect. As we explain later (see *infra* text accompanying note 328), German corporate law requires corporate directors to pursue the interest of the firm as fiduciaries and specifies the ensuing obligations on a uniform doctrinal basis for the AG and the GmbH, with no explicit attention to the specific companies' purposes and financing structures. Holger Fleischer, *Zur organschaftlichen Treuepflicht der Geschäftsleiter im Aktien- und GmbH-Recht*, 57 WERTPAPIER–MITTEILUNGEN [WM] 1045, 1050 (2003) (showing the common doctrinal anchor of the directors' duty of loyalty in the AG and the GmbH and surveying its content jointly for both legal forms). This regime is largely mandatory and thus also rules out customized arrangements. See *infra* text accompanying note 405–409. In Italy, with the support of scholars, directors' duty of loyalty is construed as the duty to advance the interest of the firm. This conceptualization of the duty of loyalty is monolithic: that is, it applies irrespective of any company's individual characteristics. Thus, not only is the content of the duty of loyalty of widely held companies' directors the same as that for directors of close corporations, but, within the universe of close corporations, no variations exist between the duty of loyalty of directors of a corporation running a family business and that of directors of a VC-backed firm. Crucially, private ordering cannot alter this. See, e.g., Alberto Mazzoni, *Patti di co-vendita e doveri fiduciari*, in TRASFERIMENTI DI PARTECIPAZIONI AZIONARIE, 211, 245–249 (Alberto Crivellaro ed., 2017) (arguing that a director must always pursue the interest of the shareholders as a class, irrespective of a specific firm's financial structure and governance and, ultimately, of what (implicit) contractual arrangements may suggest); *id.* at 253 (stressing that, unlike in common law jurisdictions, private ordering cannot ex ante exempt a fiduciary from their duties). Intuitively, the lack of nuance, coupled with the limits for private ordering, may lead to outcomes inconsistent with the arrangement that the VCF and the entrepreneur devised to serve their mutual interests. Gian Domenico Mosco & Casimiro A. Nigro, *I doveri fiduciari alla prova del capitalismo finanziario*, 20 ANALISI GIURIDICA DELL'ECONOMIA 257, 261 (2021).

⁹⁷ In Germany, for instance, courts invoked highly specific provisions in the law of corporate groups, directly applicable only to the AG, to establish a general corporate law doctrine under which dominant shareholders in a GmbH can be held personally liable for the losses of the company if their interventions caused the firm's bankruptcy; later, amidst massive criticism, courts switched to general tort law to sustain these sweeping veil-piercing actions that they felt warranted due to gaps in statutory creditor protection. See Mülbert, *supra* note 93 at 213–15, 259–62 (surveying the case law and highlighting its surprising characteristics). In Italy, several examples help understand how unpredictably corporate law can evolve. Take the regime governing the recharacterization as equity contributions of any loans that a shareholder may extend to the firm when it is under financial distress. Italian blackletter corporate law lays down this regime only for SRLs. See art. 2467, *codice civile* (It.). With the support of scholars (see Umberto Tombari, *La partecipazione di società di capitali in società di persone come nuovo "modello di organizzazione dell'impresa"*, 51 RIVISTA DELLE SOCIETÀ 201 (2006)), courts have concluded that this provision is the expression of a wide-ranging precept applying also to SPAs. See, e.g., Cass., 7 July 2015, No. 14056. Suddenly, SPAs found themselves to be subject to a new precept.

⁹⁸ In Germany, for instance, courts significantly changed their jurisprudence on capital maintenance and required, without any reference to an explicit statutory basis, that liquid assets be held against minimum legal capital, prompting the legislator to step in and correct the judicial overreach. See Wolfgang Servatius, § 30, in GMBHG, para. 36 (Ulrich Haas et al. eds., 24th ed. 2022). In Italy, examples abound. The most instructive one is perhaps the emergence of the so-called "fair value principle." See *infra* note 306 and accompanying text.

III. VC CONTRACTING IN GERMANY AND ITALY

Leveraging the attributes of Delaware corporate law,⁹⁹ U.S. VCFs and entrepreneurs, supported by the *National Venture Capital Association* (NVCA) and specialized legal counsel,¹⁰⁰ have devised a sophisticated and standardized contractual framework for VC deals.¹⁰¹ This framework is specified in the charter of VC-backed firms and various shareholder agreements.¹⁰² It chiefly aims to mitigate market frictions among VCFs and entrepreneurs and “braids” the contract the VCF enters with the entrepreneur, on the one hand, with the one it enters with its investors, on the other.¹⁰³ This braiding enables VCFs, *inter alia*, to better diversify their portfolios.¹⁰⁴

Empirical evidence suggests that U.S. VC contracts are the best real-world solution to the governance challenges in the VCF-entrepreneur relationship.¹⁰⁵ Financial economists thus predicted that U.S. VC contracts would gain popularity across jurisdictions over time and serve as a model for value-enhancing private ordering worldwide.¹⁰⁶ Transactional practice across jurisdictions seems to confirm these predictions.¹⁰⁷ Yet does this practice actually replicate the economic functions—rather than just the form—of U.S. VC contracts, once the restrictions that the local corporate law in action imposes on private ordering are taken into account?

In this Part, we systematically document how VCFs and entrepreneurs fare when they attempt to adopt U.S. VC contracts under German and Italian corporate law. We cover the comprehensive array of arrangements that feature in U.S. VC deals,¹⁰⁸ except for so-called registration rights, granting VCFs specific powers in the context of IPOs.¹⁰⁹ Contractual

⁹⁹ See *supra*, Part II.B, specifically text accompanying notes 55–58.

¹⁰⁰ The NVCA drafts standard VC contracts—also known as the “Model Legal Documents”—that serve as the starting point for negotiations between VCFs and entrepreneurs. See NVCA, *Model Legal Documents* (2020), <https://nvca.org/model-legal-documents>. Lawyers have also played an important role in this process. See John F. Coyle & Joseph M. Green, *Startup Lawyering*, 95 N.C. L. REV. 1403, 1412–15 (2017).

¹⁰¹ For extensive accounts, see THERESE H. MAYNARD & DANA M. WARREN, *BUSINESS PLANNING: FINANCING THE START-UP BUSINESS AND VENTURE CAPITAL FINANCING* (2d ed. 2014); RUPERT PEARCE & SIMON BARNES, *RAISING VENTURE CAPITAL* (2006); BRAD FELD & JASON MENDELSON, *VENTURE DEALS: BE SMARTER THAN YOUR LAWYER AND VENTURE CAPITALIST* (3d ed. 2016). See also Bartlett III, *supra* note 55, at 18–30 (providing empirical evidence on standardization).

¹⁰² See MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 112.

¹⁰³ See Gilson, *supra* note 5, at 1091.

¹⁰⁴ Enriques et al., *supra* note 21, at 14. See also *supra* text accompanying note 25.

¹⁰⁵ Lerner & Schoar, *supra* note 10, at 224. VC contracts are effective in mitigating market frictions along multiple dimensions. Steven N. Kaplan & Per Strömberg, *Characteristics, Contracts, and Actions: Evidence from Venture Capitalist Analyses*, 59 J. FIN. 2177 (2005). They are the closest to the predictions of financial contracting theory that real-world transactional practice has ever engineered. Kaplan & Strömberg, *supra* note 24. Besides, they have remained largely stable over time and across industries. *Id.* at 286–95. Finally, they have emerged more recently as the contractual underpinning of startup-financing relationships also outside the VC industry. Sergey Chernenko et al., *Mutual Funds as Venture Capitalists? Evidence from Unicorns*, 34 REV. FIN. STUD. 2362 (2021).

¹⁰⁶ See Kaplan et al., *How Do Legal Differences*, *supra* note 13, at 275 (noting that “[t]he intuitions and predictions of financial contracting theories appear to be valid across different institutional and legal regimes” and that, “[b]ased on this, we would expect more convergence toward [U.S.-]style contracts in the future.”).

¹⁰⁷ *Id.* at 291–92 (documenting the adoption of U.S. VC contracts outside the U.S., possibly by engineering alternative arrangements mimicking the same functions as the private ordering solutions included in U.S. VC contracts).

¹⁰⁸ As we have found them extensively described in the sources referenced *supra* note 101.

¹⁰⁹ Registration rights comprise “initiation rights” and “piggy-back rights,” which grant VCFs the power to initiate an IPO or to have their shares included on a pro rata basis in an IPO initiated by the company, respectively. See MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 651–67. The rationale for omitting such arrangements in our analysis is twofold. First, IPOs are in general not as common as trade sales. See Michael Klausner & Stephen Venuto, *Liquidation Rights and Incentive Misalignment in Start-up Financing*, 98 CORNELL L. REV.

arrangements that can be transplanted into Germany and Italy without adaptations that alter their functionality are an exception. They comprise tag-along rights provisions¹¹⁰ and, limited to German GmbHs only, corporate opportunity waivers.¹¹¹ These exceptions aside, German and Italian corporate laws reject the transplant, whether verbatim or via functionally equivalent arrangements,¹¹² of the contractual solutions shaping VC deals in the U.S. Contracting parties must content themselves with inferior alternative arrangements.¹¹³

We proceed by, first, explaining how we distil German and Italian corporate laws in action (Section III.A). Then, we provide an overview of our results that should help the reader access the bigger picture and more easily navigate the intricacies of VC contracting under German and Italian corporate laws (Section III.B). Finally, we discuss whether and to what extent German and Italian corporate laws allow for the transplant of U.S. VC contracts clauses (Section III.C).

A. *How We Identify the Law in Action*

We are fully aware that corporate law is relevant for VC contracting only if VCFs and entrepreneurs cannot avoid its strictures by choosing a more flexible-law jurisdiction to incorporate the VC-backed firm. As we explain in a companion paper, however, it is not cost-effective for German and Italian VCFs and entrepreneurs to use foreign legal vehicles, especially at an early stage and if they plan to run their VC-backed firms locally.¹¹⁴ If company law arbitrage is not a viable option, the economic relevance of our inquiry goes beyond its documentation of German and Italian corporate law limitations for VC contracting and the associated competitive disadvantages for local legal service providers.

As anticipated, we focus on those jurisdictions' corporate law in action.¹¹⁵ Unlike in the U.S., German and Italian corporate laws in action do not simply coincide with judge-made law. Multiple players—including notaries and, above all, scholars—play a critical role in shaping them.¹¹⁶ Thus, we define corporate law in action as the set of pertinent rules and standards as interpreted and applied, in their respective capacities, by German and Italian legal scholars, practitioners, and courts and arbitrators.

Furthermore, German and Italian corporate laws in action include not only the rules devised for corporations, but also elements of other legal domains, particularly contract law,

1399, 1403 (2013); and Salma Ben Amor & Maher Kooli, *Do M&A Exits Have the Same Effect on Venture Capital Reputation as IPO Exits?*, 111 J. BANKING & FIN. 1, 1–2 (2020) (providing recent data about the exit channels used at U.S. VC-backed firms). This is particularly the case in Europe. See Andrea Bellucci et al., *Venture Capital in Europe. Evidence-based Insights about Venture Capitalists and Venture Capital-backed Firms* (2021), <https://publications.jrc.ec.europa.eu/repository/handle/JRC122885>. Second, and more importantly, VC-backed firms make it to the IPO stage if they are particularly valuable, implying that the going-public process will typically be value-maximizing for VCFs and entrepreneurs. Incentives are therefore fully aligned, and disagreement between contracting parties seems unlikely. Hence, private ordering to resolve impending frictions seems less urgent than in downside scenarios, because the VCF hardly needs to rely on contractually assigned exit rights if an IPO is a viable exit option.

¹¹⁰ See *infra* text accompanying notes 569–570.

¹¹¹ See *infra* text following note 464.

¹¹² See *supra* text preceding note 19.

¹¹³ See *supra* text preceding notes 20.

¹¹⁴ See, also for references, Enriques et al., *supra* note 21, at 16 (accounting for the obstacles that VCFs and entrepreneurs in Germany and Italy encounter when attempting to bypass local corporate laws).

¹¹⁵ See *supra* text preceding notes 16 and 28–29.

¹¹⁶ See *infra*, Part III.1.c.

reflecting the contractual foundation of corporations in both systems.¹¹⁷ These elements—such as the general duty of good faith¹¹⁸—are, however, adjusted to the organizational setting of the corporate contract.¹¹⁹

We distil the relevant German and Italian corporate law in action as follows: if pertinent well-established case law exists, we look exclusively at it. If there is no case law, or if the exact meaning and/or authoritative character of the relevant judgments is unclear, we extend our analysis to legal scholarship and other relevant sources, such as the guidelines on corporate law issued by the regional association of notaries in Italy.¹²⁰ In these instances, corporate law in action includes the interpretation of existing legal texts that is predominant among legal scholars and/or legal gatekeepers at the time of our writing—even though we acknowledge that both practitioners and courts may occasionally deviate from a majority view in legal scholarship. However, such a deviation is, on average, less likely than courts' agreement with the majority position. If no predominant view on a specific legal issue exists, we weigh the strength of the conflicting positions to identify the view that courts are most likely to adopt and acknowledge uncertainty where such a prediction cannot be reasonably made. This approach introduces an element of discretion into our analysis, which, however, is simply unavoidable.

Despite this caveat, our process allows us to attain the best possible approximation of how German and Italian lawyers, notaries, courts, and arbitrators would determine the meaning of existing statutes if contracting parties, respectively, requested their advice or petitioned for their ruling on the validity of a given private ordering solution or the boundaries within which they ought to exercise the ensuing rights.¹²¹

¹¹⁷ As to German corporate law, see Jens Koch, § 23 in AKTIENGESETZ, para. 6–7 (Jens Koch ed., 19th ed., 2025) (explaining that the AG originates from the charter as a contract *sui generis*); Wolfgang Servatius, § 2, in GMBHG, para. 3 (Ulrich Haas et al. eds., 24th ed. 2022) (same for the GmbH). In the case law, see *Bundesgerichtshof* [BGH] [Federal Supreme Court], Oct. 4, 1956, 21 ENTSCHEIDUNGEN DES BUNDESGERICHTSHOFS IN ZIVILSACHEN [BGHZ], 370, 373 (outlining the contractual basis of legal persons). As to Italian corporate law, see art. 2247, *codice civile* (It.) (laying down the definition of “*società*,” a broad category that comprises both partnerships and corporations, and identifying it as a contract). In the case law, see, e.g., Cass., 26 October 1995, No. 11151 (stressing explicitly that corporations have a contractual basis).

¹¹⁸ See *supra* note 95.

¹¹⁹ See, e.g., Christoph H. Seibt, § 23, in AKTG, para. 3 (Karsten Schmidt & Marcus Lutter eds., 5th ed. 2024); and Floriano D'Alessandro, *Il fenomeno societario tra contratto e organizzazione*, 44 GIURISPRUDENZA COMMERCIALE 487 (2017), respectively.

¹²⁰ Notaries in Italy are organized in regional associations that issue guidelines on how to interpret corporate law. For an example, see *infra* note 149. Understandably, these guidelines are generally in line with the predominant view among legal scholars and courts on a specific legal issue. The associations have specialized commissions preparing these guidelines, which often comprise mainly, if not exclusively, legal academics. Affiliated notaries duly consider such guidelines when performing their functions. In particular, they must check the legality (broadly construed) of the transaction brought before them. Failure to do so may lead to professional liability. Notaries thus generally adhere strictly to those guidelines to limit liability risk (see *supra* note 92). The most influential guidelines are those published by the notarial association of Milan. See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massime della Commissione in materia societaria*, <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/societa/massime-commissione-societa/>. We primarily consider Milan notarial when distilling the law in action. But if the association of Milan has issued none, we look at the guidelines issued by other notarial associations. In one instance, we observe divergence between the stance taken on a specific legal issue by the notarial association of Milan and the one taken by another notarial association and characterize this circumstance, in the absence of legal precedents or authoritative scholarly opinions, as giving rise to unresolvable uncertainty (see *infra* text preceding note 413).

¹²¹ We are ready to acknowledge that both legal gatekeepers and enforcers may occasionally deviate from scholars' (majority) views.

Compounding our challenge, existing legal sources provide little guidance on whether (or how) U.S. VC contract provisions can be transplanted into our two jurisdictions.¹²² When no specific answer exists, we address them by turning—again in strict adherence to Italian and German interpretation practices—to doctrinal legal scholarship and case law on similar or more general corporate law issues that legal scholars, legal gatekeepers, and courts and arbitrators would consider in determining the corporate law regime applicable to a specific arrangement or the exercise of the ensuing rights. However, it is fair to admit that in some cases it is impossible to tell what the law in action is on a given issue. In such cases, we indicate that there is unresolvable uncertainty as to the applicable law, which is, of course, problematic for VC contracting.¹²³

B. *Overview of Our Results*

We find that German and Italian corporate laws prevent VCFs and entrepreneurs from transplanting nearly any of the U.S. arrangements. They do so by enlisting various legal constraints, which:

- a) only occasionally originate from harmonized E.U. corporate law;¹²⁴
- b) are rarely explicitly stated in national statutory corporate law. Instead, they almost always stem from scholarly constructs;
- c) rarely take the form of absolute prohibitions that rule out U.S.-style arrangements and any alternative arrangements—whether functionally equivalent or not.¹²⁵ In most instances, we detect instead relative prohibitions that rule out the specific private ordering solution included in U.S. VC deals and functionally equivalent arrangements but allow contracting parties to avail themselves of inferior alternative arrangements.¹²⁶

¹²² The lack of case law is easy to explain: VCFs and entrepreneurs tend to solve their disagreements without resorting to litigation. When they do, they most often use arbitration. See Denga, *supra* note 76, at 725, 728 & 755 (2021) (highlighting that disputes are almost exclusively solved via arbitration in the VC context); Carlo F. Giampaolino, *Clausola di co-vendita (drag-along) ed “equa” valorizzazione dell’azione*, 62 BANCA BORSA E TITOLI DI CREDITO 523, 525 (2009) (making the same point). As to the lack of literature, see, e.g., KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 4–6 (highlighting the lack of comprehensive studies on the impact of German corporate law on transplanted U.S. VC contracts as of 2016); Giudici & Agstner, *supra* note 5, at 616 (stressing that, as of 2019, corporate law scholarship “substantially ignored the VC model of startup financing.”).

¹²³ See *supra* text accompanying notes 44–47.

¹²⁴ The most notable example is the regime regarding capital maintenance, which also limits firms’ discretion to make distributions to shareholders and buy back shares. See *infra* text accompanying notes 235 and 539–541. In other instances, E.U. company law introduces provisions that are *de facto* non-mandatory. The most notable example is the regime regarding mergers. The relevant E.U. corporate law regime stipulates that cash payments in mergers cannot exceed 10 per cent of the shares’ nominal value, but it also allows member states to introduce functionally equivalent transactions to which the 10 per cent cap on cash payments does not apply. For details, see *infra* text accompanying note 586.

¹²⁵ See *supra* text preceding note 36.

¹²⁶ See *supra* text preceding note 37.

C. *How Contractual Transplants Are Rejected*

We now account for how German and Italian corporate laws treat U.S. VC contractual arrangements. To do so, we first describe the structure of a given individual component of U.S. VC contracts and sketch out its economic function. Next, we identify the corporate law constraints that prevent their transplant into German and Italian VC deals. Then, we assess whether contracting parties can adopt functionally equivalent arrangements or merely inferior alternative ones. Finally, if any such alternative arrangement is available, we briefly explain why it is inferior to the U.S. model, unless this assessment is self-evident.

We group the contractual clauses typical of U.S. VC deals according to their impact on the VC-backed firm's financial structure (Section III.C.1), its governance arrangements (Section III.C.2), and contracting parties' ability to divest (Section III.C.3).

1. Financial Structure

U.S. VC contracts design an elaborate financial structure for the VC-backed firm to allocate risk between the parties. If the firm does not perform within the stipulated timeframe, the VCF can force the liquidation of its assets or of the VCF's own shares and, very much like a creditor, seize all the firm's residual value (or most of it) ahead of the entrepreneur.

U.S. VC deals allocate risk this way to allow the VCF to inject funds into portfolio companies only as they meet predetermined milestones. To make funding dependent on the companies' sustained positive option value, parties rely on a unique security design facilitating morphable financial claims. Additional protections significantly expand VCFs' fixed claims over time and reallocate value to them in case they overvalued the firm at the stage of their initial investment. The resulting downside protection is crucial to generate portfolio returns proportionate to the high risks VCFs take.

The arrangements leading to this result are, more specifically, those governing staged financing, conversion rights, liquidation preferences, automatic and cumulative dividends, and anti-dilution provisions. This section describes these arrangements and takes stock of the regulatory constraints that VCFs and entrepreneurs face under German and Italian corporate laws when they attempt to transplant them.

i. Staged Financing

Under the contractual framework governing U.S. VC deals, VCFs commit capital in stages, based on specific charter provisions. In other words, they disburse funds as the portfolio company achieves predetermined milestones that serve as proxies for successful business development.¹²⁷ Staged financing enables VCFs to screen out poorly developing investment opportunities¹²⁸ and, after investing, save on monitoring costs.¹²⁹ In addition, it reduces VCFs' exposure to the individual portfolio company's risk and mitigates agency costs.¹³⁰

¹²⁷ PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 129–38 (discussing staged financing and particularly milestones from a transactional perspective in detail).

¹²⁸ See Klausner & Litvak, *supra* note 5, at 59.

¹²⁹ Paul A. Gompers, *Optimal Investment, Monitoring, and the Staging of Venture Capital* 50 J. FIN. 1461 (1995).

¹³⁰ See Gilson, *supra* note 5, at 1078–81.

German and Italian corporate laws allow for staged financing arrangements,¹³¹ as transactional practice confirms.¹³² This observation should be taken with a pinch of salt, though. Staged financing embeds an abandonment option,¹³³ which serves as the VCF's first line of defense against the risk that the project may fail.¹³⁴ This abandonment option as such only allows VCFs to avoid injecting additional funds. The ultimate price for exercising the option hinges on whether VCFs can also recover some of the value left in the firm that, without additional capital, is bound to be liquidated.¹³⁵ The arrangements intertwined with staged financing that in U.S. VC deals allow VCFs to recover such value are less effective under German and Italian corporate laws.¹³⁶ A VCF exercising the abandonment option may thus lose more than it would in a similar U.S. deal. Consistent with this, at least in Italy, practitioners warn their clients about the higher costs of termination.¹³⁷

ii. Conversion Rights

U.S. VC contracts typically stipulate that the entrepreneur holds common shares, while the VCF holds convertible preferred shares, which it can convert into common shares at any time.¹³⁸ The crux of convertible preferred shares lies in their conversion rights,¹³⁹ which allow VCFs to transform their financial claims against the VC-backed firm from fixed to residual, while at the same time renouncing the control rights VCFs are typically granted until conversion.¹⁴⁰ By allowing VCFs' cash-flow and control rights to change, which will de facto depend on firm performance, conversion rights play a major role in addressing the adverse selection and moral hazard problems that plague the financing of high-tech innovative firms: conditioning entrepreneurs' payouts heavily on the success of the VC-backed firm induces optimal effort while screening out bad ventures.¹⁴¹

German and Italian corporate laws do not allow for conversion rights as we have just described them.

¹³¹ See, respectively, Eckart Gottschalk & Konrad Ulmer, *Garantien der Aktiengesellschaft bei einer Kapitalerhöhung*, 59 DEUTSCHES STEUERRECHT 1173, 1178 (2021) (indicating that authorized capital increases can be used to implement staged financing arrangements) and Szego, *supra* note 14, 824–25 (acknowledging that these arrangements are viable under Italian corporate law).

¹³² See, as to Germany, Wolfgang Weitnauer, *Teil E – Die VC-Beteiligung*, in HANDBUCH, *supra* note 15, at paras. 120–23 (providing examples for staged financing structures applied in German VC deals). As to Italy, Gardina & Pairona, *supra* note 15, at 424–25 (confirming that staged finance arrangements are ubiquitous in Italian VC deals).

¹³³ See Gilson, *supra* note 5, at 1078.

¹³⁴ Gompers, *supra* note 129, at 1461.

¹³⁵ See William W. Bratton & Michael L. Wachter, *A Theory of Preferred Stock*, 161 U. PA. L. REV., 1814, at 1878 (2013) (showing that U.S. VC contracts lower the strike price for the abandonment option because they “provide for the event of failure by allocating such value as has been created to the venture capitalist.”).

¹³⁶ These arrangements are liquidation preferences and automatic and cumulative dividends. For a description of U.S. arrangements and a discussion about how their regulatory treatment under German and Italian corporate laws adversely affects their functionality, see *infra* Parts III.C.1.iii and III.C.1.iv.

¹³⁷ Gardina & Pairona, *supra* note 15, at 427 (hinting at the importance of appreciating the viability of staged financing also in light of how regulatory constraints affect the functionality of other private ordering solutions).

¹³⁸ For details, see MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 479–82.

¹³⁹ *Id.* at 528–29.

¹⁴⁰ Fried & Ganor, *supra* note 66, at 982. On these control rights, see briefly *infra*, text accompanying notes 398–399.

¹⁴¹ See generally Klausner & Litvak, *supra* note 5, at 65–66 (discussing conversion rights as a component of convertible preferred shares in combination with liquidation preferences and explaining their economic function).

In principle, German corporate law grants contracting parties a significant degree of freedom in shaping the attributes of shares¹⁴² and allows AGs to issue convertible bonds.¹⁴³ However, two implicit legal requirements rule out U.S.-style conversion rights. One obstacle is the informative function of the firm's charter. German legal scholars see the firm's charter as instrumental to conveying information about the firm's essential organizational and financial features to shareholders and other stakeholders.¹⁴⁴ Therefore, the charter cannot include provisions stipulating that an external event not fully specified in the charter itself, and thus publicly available from the corporate register, for instance one shareholder's decision, may change one of the company's essential features—namely, the type of shares held by its shareholders. Such provisions, as the doctrine goes, would require stakeholders to engage with a firm whose fundamental organizational and financial features are “unstable,” resulting in a lack of legal certainty that would ultimately prevent the firm from operating effectively on factor markets.¹⁴⁵ Based on this general construct, German corporate law bans conversion right clauses. In fact, these clauses imply radical changes in shareholders' cash-flow and control rights in the firm.

Another such obstacle derives from the fundamental legal concept of “shares.” German corporate (and insolvency) law includes an implicit guiding principle that shares must represent residual claims.¹⁴⁶ To be sure, shares can be designed to include bond-like features in dividend distribution,¹⁴⁷ but this implies *a contrario* that they cannot exhibit such a structure in liquidation.

The consequence of the two constructs above is that, under German corporate law, arrangements seeking to create U.S.-style conversion rights are unviable, as transactional practice confirms.¹⁴⁸

Similarly, Italian corporate law in principle grants contracting parties broad discretion in defining shares' attributes for both legal forms. In SPAs and SME SRLs, it allows for classes of shares and in SRLs it enables charters to assign non-transferable rights to individual shareholders—as opposed to specified (categories of) shares—(so-called rights *ad*

¹⁴² The corporate law regime for AG stipulates that a share “may confer different rights, namely as concerns the distribution of profits and the company's assets,” with “[s]hares having the same rights ... form[ing] a class of shares.” § 11 *AktG* (Ger.). The corporate law regime for GmbH allows contracting parties to achieve the same result and explicitly acknowledges their freedom to customize profit participation rights. § 29 para. 3 sent. 2 *GmbHG* (Ger.). See also *supra* note 147.

¹⁴³ § 221 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.).

¹⁴⁴ Hans-Joachim Priester, *Satzungsänderung und Satzungsdurchbrechung*, 161 *ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR DAS GESAMTE HANDELSRECHT UND WIRTSCHAFTSRECHT* 40, 53 (1987).

¹⁴⁵ This construct emerged from the regime governing AGs. For details see, e.g., Jens Koch, § 179 *AktG*, in *AKTIENGESETZ*, *supra* note 117, at para. 26. It then evolved into a general corporate law principle that migrated into the regime governing GmbHs as well. See Joachim Tebben, § 53 in 3 *SCHOLZ GMBHG* para. 185 (13d ed. 2025).

¹⁴⁶ § 271 para. 1 *AktG* and § 73 *GmbHG* (Ger.). See, e.g., Gregor Bachmann, § 271 in *BECK'SCHER ONLINE GROßKOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, para. 2 (Gerald Spindler & Eberhard Stolz eds., 5th ed. 2022); Hans-Friedrich Müller, § 73, in 3 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG* para. 1 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

¹⁴⁷ § 139 *AktG* (Ger.). See, e.g., Gerald Bezenberger & Tillman Bezenberger, § 139 in *GROßKOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, paras. 7–9 (Heribert Hirte et al. eds., 5th ed. 2021). The regime governing the GmbH also allows charters to establish profit preferences. § 29 para. 3 *GmbHG* (Ger.). In the literature, see Jens Ekkenga, § 29 in 1 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG*, para. 189 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

¹⁴⁸ Even the template for an investment agreement with a GmbH provided in the leading handbook does not foresee convertible shares and instead resorts to convertible loan agreements. See Wolfgang Weitnauer, *Anhang VI. 1 – Beteiligungsvertrag (GmbH)*, in *HANDBUCH*, *supra* note 15. As we explain below, convertible loan agreements are inferior alternative arrangements. See *infra* text accompanying notes 162–163.

personam).¹⁴⁹ Within the framework defining the boundaries within which private ordering can determine the characteristics of shares, Italian corporate law allows for conversion rights in SPAs,¹⁵⁰ but essentially prohibits them in SRLs.¹⁵¹ Yet, even for SPAs, it precludes the types of conversion rights that are commonplace in U.S. VC deals. That is because, according to legal scholars, arrangements spelling out the attributes of shares must be in line with the implicit corporate law requirements defining shares' key features.

Among such key features is the assignment of a residual claim enabling the shareholder to participate in the firm's upside. Any security that does not incorporate such a claim is simply not a share.¹⁵² This interpretation is derived from three statutory provisions in the Civil Code. The first one is the provision jointly defining the contract establishing partnerships and companies as the contract that binds two or more persons to contribute goods or services with a view to jointly running an economic activity for the ultimate purpose of sharing in its profits.¹⁵³ The second one stipulates that SPA shareholders must participate, *inter alia*, in the company's net profits and the proceeds from winding it up.¹⁵⁴ The third provision treats arrangements that exclude a shareholder from participating in any of the firm's profits or bearing any of its losses as null and void.¹⁵⁵ This requirement, known as the "prohibition against

¹⁴⁹ The corporate law regime for SPAs stipulates that the firm's charter can define the attributes of special classes of shares (that is, shares other than common shares), albeit "within the limits established by the law." See art. 2348, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.). In SRLs, contracting parties can achieve partly similar results by granting governance and profit participation rights *ad personam*. See art. 2468, comma 3, *codice civile* (It.). Scholars, however, conclude that such rights *ad personam* can also pertain to matters other than those that blackletter corporate law mentions explicitly. See, e.g., Mario Notari, *Diritti "particolari" dei soci e categorie "speciali" di partecipazioni*, 3 ANALISI GIURIDICA DELL'ECONOMIA 325, 330–32 (2003). Practitioners concur. See, e.g., Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 39 of 19 Nov. 2004 "Diritti particolari dei soci nella s.r.l."*, <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/39/>. Furthermore, blackletter corporate law stipulates that (1) SME SRLs can issue, similar to SPAs, "classes of shares," meaning shares incorporating different sets of rights; and (2) contracting parties can determine the shares' attributes in a way similar to what corporate law allows as regards SPAs. See art. 26, commi 2, 3, *Decreto Sviluppo*, *supra* note 73.

¹⁵⁰ Amal A. Awwad, *Profili di tutela delle azioni convertibili in SOCIETÀ*, *supra* note 84, at 459–61 (explaining that the permission to convert tracking shares into ordinary shares—under art. 2350, comma 4, *codice civile* (It.)—has given legitimacy to "a general principle of convertibility of shares of one class into shares of another class"). For a broader discussion, see GIUSTINO DI CECCO, *CONVERTIBILITÀ E CONVERSIONE DEI TITOLI AZIONARI* 245–69 (2012) (showing that shareholder conversion rights are, in principle, accepted by most scholars).

¹⁵¹ Conversion rights are unviable in SRL because there is no possibility to create different classes of shares (other than in SME SRLs: see *supra* note 149). While the Civil Code does not stipulate such a restriction (*cf.* art. 2468, *codice civile* (It.)), scholars argue that a differentiation of the contents of SRLs' shares is impermissible other than in the form of rights *ad personam* (see *supra* note 149). In the literature, see, e.g., Alessandra Daccò, *Le partecipazioni dei soci in 3 DIRITTO COMMERCIALE.DIRITTO DELLE SOCIETÀ* 669, 674 (Marco Cian ed., 2017). In the absence of scholarly views (to the best of our knowledge), practitioners appear to admit (automatic) conversion rights in SME SRLs. *Cf.* Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 171 of 27 Nov. 2018 "Nozione di categorie di quote di s.r.l. PMI"*, <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissionesocieta/171/> (discussing the viability of mechanisms leading to the automatic conversion of such shares). However, even insofar as conversion rights may, in principle, be viable in such companies, they remain subject to the general corporate law limits we discuss next. See *infra* text accompanying notes 153–156.

¹⁵² See, e.g., Nicola de Luca, *Il socio "leone". Il revirement della Cassazione su opzioni put a prezzo definito e divieto del patto leonino*, 72 BANCA BORSA E TITOLI DI CREDITO 70, 91 (2019) (affirming that a security is a share if and only if it exposes its holder to the firm's risk). This "*summa divisio*" between equity and debt is an unchallenged concept taught also in law schools. See, e.g., NICOLA DE LUCA & ALBERTO STAGNO D'ALCONTRES, *MANUALE DELLE SOCIETÀ*, 188–95 and 237–50 (2d ed., 2023) (discussing the fundamental features of shares and bonds). Case law confirms the significant role of this *summa divisio* in today's corporate law. See, e.g., Cass., 4 July 2018, No. 17498 (It.) (affirming that, although Italian corporate law now gives more room to private ordering than in the past, the *summa divisio* between equity and debt persists).

¹⁵³ Art. 2247, *codice civile* (It.).

¹⁵⁴ Art. 2350, *codice civile* (It.).

¹⁵⁵ Art. 2265, *codice civile* (It.).

societas leonina” and, on its face, only applying to partnerships, has been held to express a general principle also applying to companies,¹⁵⁶ and implies that a shareholder, to be considered as such, *must* have a claim to a fraction of the firm’s profits.

This construct serves as the main analytical framework to define what private ordering—whether by using the firm’s charter or a shareholder agreement and irrespective of its organizational form¹⁵⁷—can achieve when shaping shareholders’ cash-flow rights and, more broadly speaking, their position within the firm.¹⁵⁸ One implication of this construct is that private ordering cannot design shares in such a way that a VCF shall permanently *or temporarily* have a fixed claim against the firm from unconverted preferred shares.¹⁵⁹ U.S.-style conversion rights are, therefore, simply a non-starter in Italian VC deals, as available evidence confirms.¹⁶⁰

VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under German and Italian corporate law may devise alternative arrangements replicating the contingent payoff of convertible preferred shares through other securities—namely, convertible bonds or similar. In German VC deals involving GmbHs, contracting parties indeed resort to a combination of convertible loans¹⁶¹ and shareholder agreements.¹⁶² These shareholder agreements typically stipulate that at predetermined events and/or at the discretion of the VCF, the contracting parties will take the steps required to convert loans into equity—that is, to execute a capital increase and make the

¹⁵⁶ The main rationale for this widely held view is that arrangements departing from it would make a shareholder insensitive to the firm’s fate and thus create incentives to make irresponsible decisions. See, e.g., NICCOLÒ ABRIANI, IL DIVIETO DEL PATTO LEONINO, 41–51 (1994). Scholars and courts have hardly questioned this interpretation. See Nicola De Luca, *Dal socio leone all’agnello sacrificale? Considerazioni sulla clausola di recesso a prezzo definito*, 74 BANCA BORSA E TITOLI DI CREDITO 369, 375 (2021); Trib. Milano, 30 Dec. 2011 (It.). A recent exception is Antonio Capizzi, *Contro il divieto di patto leonino applicato alle società di capitali: per un giudizio in concreto sulle ipotesi di abuso da parte del socio esentato dalle perdite*, 13 RIVISTA ORIZZONTI DEL DIRITTO COMMERCIALE 487 (2024).

¹⁵⁷ The foundational nature of those corporate law provisions and the broad scope of the derived doctrinal standards imply that they determine the boundaries of private ordering in shaping the attributes of SRLs’ shares and the rights (for instance, *ad personam*) that SRL shareholders can be granted. See, e.g., Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *supra* note 149 (explaining that the regime allowing SRL charters to assign a shareholder rights *ad personam* must comply with the prohibition against *societas leonina* and the framework described above, as well as, more broadly, with “other mandatory corporate law provisions.”). The general implicit regulatory constraints that limit contracting parties’ discretion in shaping the attributes of SPA shares are held to apply also to SME SRL shares. See, e.g., Niccolò Abriani, *La struttura finanziaria della società a responsabilità limitata*, 12 RIVISTA DI DIRITTO SOCIETARIO 501 (2019). On contracting parties’ generalized inability to escape mandatory corporate law through shareholder agreements, see *supra* note 87 and corresponding text.

¹⁵⁸ PAOLO SFAMENI, AZIONI DI CATEGORIA E DIRITTI PATRIMONIALI 88–102 (2008) (stressing that contracting parties must act within this framework in defining the attributes of shares in SPAs).

¹⁵⁹ Under U.S. VC contracts, the VCF is *de facto* a fixed claimant so long as its shares are unconverted. See *supra* note 140 and corresponding text.

¹⁶⁰ See Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 801 (reporting that, based on the empirical evidence, conversion rights are absent from Italian transactional practice).

¹⁶¹ See Wolfgang Weitnauer, *Anhang VI. 1 – Beteiligungsvertrag (GmbH) Anlage 3B.1*, in HANDBUCH, *supra* note 15 (providing a standard form for the convertible loan agreement). In an AG, convertible bonds are available. § 221 para 1 *AktG* (Ger.). No such securities can instead be issued in a GmbH, requiring transactional practice to replicate the conversion mechanism in loan agreements and rely on shareholder agreements. For details, see Johannes Maidl, *Die Wandelschuldverschreibung bei der GmbH*, 9 NEUE ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT [NZG] 778 (2006).

¹⁶² This is the solution suggested by the templates provided in the leading practitioners’ handbooks. See, e.g., Stefan-Ulrich Müller, *O. Gesellschaftervereinbarung – Shareholders’ Agreement § 13*, in BECK’SCHES FORMULARBUCH ZIVIL-, WIRTSCHAFTS- UND UNTERNEHMENSRECHT (Robert Walz ed., 5th ed. 2022); Weitnauer, *supra* note 148 (providing a standard contractual form for the investment agreement (“*Beteiligungsvertrag*”)).

necessary amendments to the firm's charter.¹⁶³ These solutions suffer, however, from one fundamental limitation. As they are included in shareholder agreements and hinge critically on the entrepreneur's cooperation, they are not self-enforcing.¹⁶⁴ They are thus not functionally equivalent to their U.S. counterparts. Convertible bonds, available in VC-backed firms incorporated as AG,¹⁶⁵ might work more effectively, as the conversion as such is self-enforcing.¹⁶⁶ However, such bonds cannot provide for control rights similar to those typically attached to U.S.-style convertible shares.¹⁶⁷

In Italian VC deals, VCFs and entrepreneurs may use, as suggested by some scholars,¹⁶⁸ convertible bonds or, depending on the firm's organizational form, debt notes.¹⁶⁹ Yet, under Italian corporate law, neither of such securities could grant VCFs control rights similar to those attaching to shares, including voting rights, which VCFs typically demand.¹⁷⁰

To be sure, conversion rights are nothing but a technical instrument used in U.S. VC contracting to enable VCFs to shift risk in response to firm performance.¹⁷¹ Even though U.S.-style conversion rights are unavailable in Germany and Italy, VC contracting in these jurisdictions might not be significantly impaired if risk-shifting were achievable through other arrangements. In theory, one such technique would be liquidation preferences in favor of the VCF.¹⁷² However, as we see next, U.S.-style liquidation preferences cannot be transplanted, whether verbatim or via functionally equivalent arrangements.

iii. Liquidation Preferences

Unconverted convertible preferred shares incorporate, *inter alia*, special cash-flow rights. They provide liquidation preferences and automatic and cumulative dividends,¹⁷³ which benefit from anti-dilution protections.¹⁷⁴ We discuss liquidation preferences first.¹⁷⁵

¹⁶³ In a first step, the VCF and the entrepreneur have to create pre-determined and pre-authorized capital. § 55a *GmbHG* (Ger.). In a second step, the authorized capital has to be issued as specified events materialize. Voting agreements oblige the entrepreneur to vote for the underlying capital increase that permits the conversion of the VCFs' bonds as specified events materialize. See Laura Frühauf & Christoph H. Seibt, *F.V.2 Gesellschaftervereinbarung (Beitritt eines Finanzinvestors, Venture Capital-typische Klauseln)*, in BECK'SCHES FORMULARBUCH MERGERS & ACQUISITIONS, paras. 1, 12 (Christoph H. Seibt ed., 4th ed. 2025). See also Wolfgang Weitnauer, *Teil E – Die VC Beteiligung*, in HANDBUCH, *supra* note 15, at paras. 8, 12.

¹⁶⁴ On self-enforcing contractual arrangements and their importance within the VCF-entrepreneur relationship, see *supra* note 41 and corresponding text.

¹⁶⁵ See *supra* text accompanying note 143.

¹⁶⁶ Tim Florstedt, § 221, in 4 KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, para. 274 (Wolfgang Zöllner & Ulrich Noack eds., 3d ed. 2017) (summarizing the predominant doctrine of *facultas alternativa* that sees bondholders substituting their debt claim for a residual one as shareholders).

¹⁶⁷ Holders of convertible bonds only become shareholders upon conversion and enjoy shareholder rights only thereafter. See Mathias Habersack, § 221, in MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG para. 24a, 27 (Mathias Habersack & Wulf Goette eds., 5th ed. 2021) (explaining that the conversion creates an original shareholder position for the first time, whereas prior to conversion bondholders are only creditors of the company).

¹⁶⁸ Szego, *supra* note 14, at 841 (advancing this suggestion as to SPAs).

¹⁶⁹ Under Italian corporate law, SPAs can issue convertible bonds, and SRL can issue similar "debt notes." See artt. 2420, 2483, *codice civile* (It.), respectively.

¹⁷⁰ For details, see Nigro & Enriques, *supra* note 12, at 173–74 (showing that, under Italian corporate law, convertible bonds or, depending on the firm's organizational form, convertible debt notes, as long as they are unconverted, may not grant voting rights in the shareholder meeting).

¹⁷¹ See *supra* text preceding note 129.

¹⁷² For details on this arrangement, see *infra* text accompanying notes 175–185.

¹⁷³ On automatic and cumulative dividends, see *infra* Part III.C.1.iv.

¹⁷⁴ See *infra* Part III.C.1.v.

¹⁷⁵ See generally, MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 492–528.

In U.S. VC contracts, liquidation preferences, which are typically included in the firm's charter, determine the allocation of proceeds among the VCF and the entrepreneur in so-called liquidity events, such as redemptions, trade sales, or the company's winding up.¹⁷⁶ More precisely, "non-participating" liquidation preferences enable the VCF to receive a specified amount per share before any payment is made to the entrepreneur. The residual surplus, if any, is assigned entirely to the entrepreneur.¹⁷⁷ "Participating" liquidation preferences instead imply that, in addition to the specified amount per share, the VCF also receives a pro rata share of any residual surplus.¹⁷⁸ Participating liquidation preferences can be either "capped" or "uncapped," depending on whether there is a ceiling on the VCF's preferential cash-flow rights.¹⁷⁹ For uncapped participating liquidation preferences, conversion rights are practically unimportant, as VCFs' payoff will always be greater without converting.¹⁸⁰ Both types of liquidation preferences are often disproportionate to the amount originally invested,¹⁸¹ with their face value bound to increase over time because of automatic and cumulative dividends.¹⁸² The VCF may receive the bulk, if not all, of the proceeds of a liquidity event because of these arrangements.¹⁸³ Liquidation preferences have a strong efficiency rationale.¹⁸⁴ They are crucial for efficient risk allocation and have a significant impact on VCFs' portfolio returns.¹⁸⁵

German and Italian corporate laws preclude the transplant of U.S.-style liquidation preferences.

German corporate law bans liquidation preferences for several reasons. Let us look at non-participating liquidation preferences first. As we have seen, U.S.-style conversion rights are prohibited,¹⁸⁶ which thwarts the mechanism required for those liquidation preferences to perform their function. The same applies to capped participating liquidation preferences. Moreover, such arrangements would clash with the implicit guiding principle in German corporate (and insolvency) law that shares must represent residual claims.¹⁸⁷ Finally, although German corporate law allows for arrangements curtailing or even suppressing shareholders'

¹⁷⁶ Klausner & Venuto, *supra* note 109, at 1403. For a basic definition of trade sales and redemptions, see *infra* text accompanying notes 573 and 634, respectively.

¹⁷⁷ Klausner & Venuto, *supra* note 109, at 1404.

¹⁷⁸ *Id.* at 1405.

¹⁷⁹ *Id.* at 1405–06.

¹⁸⁰ Conversion rights are economically useless when VCFs receive participating uncapped liquidation preferences. In this case, the VCF's payoff is always greater if it does not convert, regardless of the amount for which the company is sold, because the liquidation preferences top up the pro rata participation in the realized firm value. See Klausner & Venuto, *supra* note 109, at 1407.

¹⁸¹ Fried & Ganor, *supra* note 140, at 982 ("[d]epending on the circumstances, these multiples can be quite high, as much as six times the original purchase price or higher.").

¹⁸² See *infra* text accompanying notes 230–232.

¹⁸³ See, also for references, *infra* note 577 and accompanying text.

¹⁸⁴ See e.g., Fried & Ganor, *supra* note 140, at 983 (discussing how these arrangements address market frictions).

¹⁸⁵ See William W. Bratton, *Venture Capital on the Downside: Preferred Stock and Corporate Control*, 100 MICH. L. REV. 891 (2002) (discussing the significance of VCFs' protections to allocate risk efficiently); and Sven Riethmueller, "Rise of the Zombies:" *The Significance of Venture Capital Investments That Are Not Profitable*, 22 HOUS. BUS. & TAX L.J. 98 (2021) (using simulations of VCFs' portfolio returns to demonstrate how results that are in line with market benchmarks depend on this type of protections).

¹⁸⁶ See *supra* Part III.C.1.ii, particularly text following note 143.

¹⁸⁷ See *supra* notes 146–147 and accompanying text.

rights to participate in the company's profits,¹⁸⁸ including in the event of liquidation,¹⁸⁹ such arrangements are available only when the company is formally dissolved and its assets are sold off. They are not available for the allocation of the proceeds of other liquidity events, including trade sales in the form of share transfers.¹⁹⁰ Therefore, the only way for German VCFs and entrepreneurs to replicate U.S.-style liquidation preferences in trade sales would be to structure these transactions as a piecemeal asset sale, which is, in theory, possible but, in practice, unworkable most of the times.¹⁹¹

Participating liquidation preferences present their own problems. Building on the idea that participating liquidation preferences enable the VCF to capture a disproportionate amount of firm value *qua* both fixed and residual claimant,¹⁹² and that they can thereby lead to an unfair outcome for the entrepreneur in low-value liquidity events,¹⁹³ scholars advocate an ex post check on their size by deploying well-established doctrines.¹⁹⁴ These doctrines include the reasonableness test under the law of unfair terms and conditions and the doctrine of unconscionability,¹⁹⁵ but the most trenchant one is rooted in the broad concept of good faith.¹⁹⁶ In general, good faith commands a contracting party to consider the interests of the other party when performing their obligations and exercising their rights, the underlying rationale being

¹⁸⁸ Commentators predominantly build on blackletter AG law to consider this kind of arrangements valid even when they are included in the firm's charter. See § 11 *AktG* (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Hildegard Ziemons, § 11 in *KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, para. 22 (Karsten Schmidt & Markus Lutter eds., 5th ed. 2024). Some commentators have expressed concerns about their validity, though. See e.g., Sebastian Mock, § 11 in *GROßKOMMENTAR*, *supra* note 147, at para. 49. These arrangements are certainly valid for GmbHs. Case law explicitly acknowledges this. See *BGH*, Jul. 14, 1954, *BGHZ* 14, 264.

¹⁸⁹ This issue is controversial under the regime governing the AG. Some very old judicial opinions validated a provision in the firm's charter that created a class of shares that would receive a larger than pro rata share in liquidation. See *Reichsgericht [RG]* [Supreme Imperial Court], Apr. 8, 1908, 68 *ENTSCHEIDUNGEN DES REICHSGERICHTS IN ZIVILSACHEN [RGZ]* 235. Building on it, some commentators have taken a more liberal approach to the matter. See, e.g., Karsten Schmidt, § 271 in *GROßKOMMENTAR*, *supra* note 147, at para. 5. Most commentators take a more restrictive stance, though. See, e.g., Jens Koch, § 271, in *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR*, *supra* note 167, at para. 6 (Wulf Goette & Mathias Habersack eds., 5th ed. 2021). As to the GmbH, blackletter law explicitly validates such arrangements even when they are included in the firm's charter. See § 72 *GmbHG* (Ger.). Therefore, commentators do not question arrangements excluding the shareholders' right to receive a fraction of the liquidation proceeds. See, e.g., Hans-Friedrich Müller, § 72, in 3 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBH-GESETZ* para. 18 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

¹⁹⁰ See e.g., Rainer Loges & Wolfram Distler, *Gestaltungsmöglichkeiten durch Aktiengattungen*, 36 *ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR WIRTSCHAFTSRECHT* 467, 471 (2002). Redemption rights are not a viable instrument to take advantage of liquidation preferences. Under German law, these arrangements are subject to restrictions. See *infra* text accompanying notes 643–655. Besides, the underlying share buybacks are constrained by minimum capital requirements. See § 57 *AktG* and § 33 *GmbHG*, (Ger.). For details, see, in the literature, Jürgen Oechsler, § 71 in 1 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, paras. 17 and 70 (Mathias Habersack & Wulf Goette eds., 6th ed. 2024); and Christian Kersting, § 33, in *GMBHG*, para. 9 (Ulrich Noack et al. eds., 23rd ed. 2022). These requirements may prove particularly onerous in ailing firms.

¹⁹¹ On the functional limitations of such transactional solution as a means to transfer firm control, see Joan C. Coates IV, *Mergers, Acquisitions, and Restructurings: Types, Regulation, and Patterns of Practice*, in *THE OXFORD HANDBOOK OF CORPORATE LAW AND GOVERNANCE* 570, 572 (Jeffrey N. Gordon & Wolf-Georg Ringe eds., 1st ed. 2018).

¹⁹² See *supra* text preceding note 178.

¹⁹³ See *supra* text preceding note 183. See also *infra* text preceding note 577.

¹⁹⁴ See, for references, KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 545 (pointing to the standard of good faith and the principles for the judicial review of the exercise of shareholder rights under it).

¹⁹⁵ For this claim, building on §§ 307, 138 *BGB* (Ger.), see Christoph Winkler, *RECHTSFRAGEN DER VENTURE CAPITAL-FINANZIERUNG*, 91–95 and 237 (2004).

¹⁹⁶ See § 242 *BGB* (Ger.) (stipulating that “an obligor has a duty to perform according to the requirements of good faith, taking customary practice into consideration.”).

that each of them should achieve their transactional objectives.¹⁹⁷ Because liquidation preferences can lead to VCFs receiving the bulk, if not all, of a liquidity event's proceeds, entrepreneurs may in some cases look like the victims of a full-blown expropriation strategy.¹⁹⁸ When liquidation preferences are subject to a good faith test, judges can review transaction terms.¹⁹⁹ This gives entrepreneurs an implicit option to renegotiate the VC deal. If they exercise it, such renegotiation disrupts the originally agreed-upon risk allocation and can undermine the financing conditions that depend on this arrangement.

Under Italian corporate law, liquidation preferences *à la* Delaware face similar obstacles. Let us consider non-participating and capped participating liquidation preferences first. Three obstacles stand in their way. First, the unviability of U.S.-style conversion rights—which we flagged above²⁰⁰—entails that it is impossible to reproduce such arrangements. Second, Italian corporate law requires that shares incorporate the right to share in the firm's uncapped upside,²⁰¹ which renders non-participating liquidation preferences a non-starter, as empirical evidence confirms.²⁰² The same requirement can be inferred to rule out capped participating liquidation preferences as well, although there is no explicit authority confirming this. Second, building once again on the prohibition against *societas leonina*,²⁰³ scholars argue that the firm's equity structure must allow all shareholders to realize a (non-symbolic) portion of firm value.²⁰⁴ More specifically, they argue that Italian corporate law also bans so-called “giraffine pacts”—that is, arrangements that create an equity structure resembling a tall tree with foliage only at the top, accessible only to the long-necked giraffe.²⁰⁵ Liquidation preferences emerge as the giraffine pact *par excellence*,²⁰⁶ and the greater the preference, the more likely it is that the VCF will be the only shareholder realizing firm value in downside scenarios. In theory, setting liquidation preferences at a magnitude that does not strictly prevent the entrepreneur from sharing in the firm value could avert this outcome. In practice, however, liquidation preferences cannot be drafted *ex ante* to preserve the entrepreneur's right to “get at least something” without impairing their core function.²⁰⁷ An entrepreneur who receives little or nothing as a result of a trade sale can thus threaten the VCF with litigation, forcing a renegotiation of the agreements

¹⁹⁷ See, also for references, e.g., Claudia Schubert, § 242 in MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM BÜRGERLICHEN GESETZBUCH, para. 10 (Franz Jürgen Säcker et al. eds., 8th ed. 2019).

¹⁹⁸ For details on the instances mentioned in the main text (chiefly trade sales irrespective of their transactional form), the applicable regime under German corporate law, and its drawbacks, see *infra* notes 588–592 and accompanying text and 610–614 and accompanying text.

¹⁹⁹ For a discussion, see KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 544–46.

²⁰⁰ See *supra*, text accompanying notes 149–156.

²⁰¹ See *supra* text accompanying notes 153–156.

²⁰² See Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 807–08 (providing evidence that contracting parties include non-participating liquidation preferences in Italian VC deals in a negligible number of cases).

²⁰³ See *supra* text accompanying notes 155–156.

²⁰⁴ See ABRIANI, *supra* note 156, at 124–25 (making this general point in abstract terms); and ZANONI, *supra* note 14, at 137–41 (reporting the relevant doctrinal framework when discussing what private ordering can achieve in VC deals involving SPAs).

²⁰⁵ See ABRIANI, *supra* note 156, at 125.

²⁰⁶ Commentators discussing liquidation preferences stress that such arrangements must comply with both the prohibition against *societas leonina* and the related ban on giraffine pacts. See, e.g., ZANONI, *supra* note 14, at 152 (ruling out that shares' cash-flow rights can be so designed as to have the effect of excluding other shareholders from participating in the firm's profits). They also rule out the viability of “shares that incorporate a right to receive a predetermined fraction of firm value because this would be tantamount to a creditor claim contingent [upon the firm's dissolution], which would neutralize the shareholder's exposure to equity risk and thus be tantamount to a provision excluding them from bearing the firm's losses”. See SFAMENI, *supra* note 204, at 98 (our translation). Notaries also make the same point. See, e.g., Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 126 of 5 Mar. 2013 “Ripartizione non proporzionale del corrispettivo della vendita o del riscatto di partecipazioni sociali,”* <https://www.consigionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/126/>.

²⁰⁷ See Nigro & Enriques, *supra* note 12, at 180.

on the allocation of the firm's risk and the overall financing conditions.²⁰⁸ Unlike the requirements that imply that shares must always include the right to participate in the firm's uncapped upside, which affects the viability of specific types of liquidation preferences, the prohibition against *societas leonina* rules out all types of liquidation preferences. In fact, it makes them all litigable ex post due to an alleged unfairness of the allocation of firm value to which they may lead.

Contracting parties in both jurisdictions resort to alternative arrangements, aiming partly also to make up for the lack of U.S.-style conversion rights.²⁰⁹ The most common alternative arrangement in German VC deals is the so-called "higher-of mechanism."²¹⁰ In its typical form, this arrangement features in shareholder agreements and governs the distribution of proceeds of trade sales executed as compelled share co-transfers. It stipulates that the VCF will receive a predetermined fraction of a liquidity event's proceeds when they are below a certain target amount and that it will participate on a pro rata basis if the proceeds are higher than that threshold amount.²¹¹ Yet, this arrangement exhibits four significant limitations.

First, it is unclear whether liquidation preferences can be included in shareholder agreements. An isolated judicial opinion held that, for transparency reasons, liquidation preferences connected with trade sales must be included in the corporate charter.²¹² Although this opinion is often characterized as an outlier,²¹³ available evidence suggests that it has some grip on transaction drafting: notaries encourage their clients to include liquidation preferences *both* in the firm's charter and in shareholder agreements.²¹⁴ Transactional practice, however, regularly opts for including them only in shareholder agreements.²¹⁵

Second, if they are included only in shareholder agreements, as is standard in transactional practice, liquidation preferences lose their self-enforcing nature: the VCF has nothing but a contractual claim against a likely cash-strapped entrepreneur.²¹⁶

In sum, the higher-of mechanism fails to fulfil the intended purpose of conversion rights.²¹⁷ Alternative arrangements that mimic conversion rights without enabling the VCF to capture the firm's upside with the same level of certainty are not equally valuable to contracting parties.

Third, the extent to which parties are free to define the type and size of liquidation preferences through alternative arrangements is unclear. Arrangements that enable VCFs to enjoy a double dip in firm value lead to an ex post check of the terms of the liquidity event.²¹⁸

²⁰⁸ For details on the strategy that the entrepreneur could deploy to litigate some transactions and achieve his goals, see *infra* note 578 and corresponding text.

²⁰⁹ See *supra* text following note 141.

²¹⁰ See, e.g., Weitnauer, *supra* note 148, at B.7.2 (providing a sample form for the investment contract).

²¹¹ See, e.g., Loges & Distler, *supra* note 190, at 471.

²¹² Landgericht Frankfurt am Main, Dec. 23, 2014, 18 NZG 482 (2015). Note that the inclusion of such a provision in the charter would not change its legal nature as an agreement that is only binding for the contracting parties (i.e., the original shareholders). See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 540–43.

²¹³ See, e.g., Stephan Harbarth et al., *Gestaltung einer von der Satzung und dem gesetzlichen Regelfall abweichenden Gewinnausschüttungsabrede in der Aktiengesellschaft*, 61 DIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT 801, 803 (2016).

²¹⁴ See Martin Thelen, *Beteiligungsverträge in der notariellen Praxis*, 165 RHEINISCHE NOTARZEITSCHRIFT 121, 135 (2020). See also Wolfgang Herrler, § 9 in GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT IN DER NOTAR- UND GESTALTUNGSPRAXIS, para. 140 (Wolfgang Herrler ed. 2017).

²¹⁵ See Weitnauer, *supra* note 148, at B.7.

²¹⁶ Recall that the relocation of a private ordering solution that is optimally located in the firm's charter to shareholder agreements implies a loss in functionality and, thus, a decrease in the value of the relevant arrangement. See *supra* note 41 and accompanying text.

²¹⁷ For details on these arrangements in German and Italian VC deals, see *supra* text following note 210 and text accompanying note 222, respectively.

²¹⁸ See *supra* text accompanying notes 192–199.

VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under Italian corporate law react to regulatory constraints regarding liquidation preferences (and conversion rights²¹⁹) by adopting two types of alternative arrangements. First, they sidestep the requirement that shares must always incorporate a right to share in the upside through provisions in the firm's charter that grant VCFs uncapped participating liquidation preferences.²²⁰ Second, they replace non-participating liquidation preferences with arrangements that rely on a higher-of mechanism²²¹ that is basically the same as the one deployed in German VC deals.²²² These arrangements fail, however, to neutralize the unenforceability risk stemming from the prohibition against *societas leonina*.²²³ In fact, this prohibition admits no circumvention through private ordering, as scholars and practitioners unanimously acknowledge.²²⁴ Transactional practice has reportedly sought to minimize this risk by including additional provisos to the effect that liquidation preferences shall not impair the entrepreneur's right to receive a symbolic fraction of value.²²⁵ This solution, however, is unlikely to prove effective because it would not prevent courts from applying the prohibition against *societas leonina*²²⁶ and giraffine pacts.²²⁷

To conclude, German and Italian corporate laws ban U.S.-style liquidation preferences. In response, VCFs and entrepreneurs adopt alternative arrangements that offer less stable and reliable downside protection than U.S. VC contracts.

iv. Automatic and Cumulative Dividends

U.S. VC deals grant VCFs who have not yet converted their convertible preferred shares the right to receive automatic dividends—that is, dividends that mature regardless of whether the firm has posted a profit and require no specific resolution by the company's bodies.²²⁸ Under standard terms in the firm's charter, such “guaranteed” dividends are typically between 2% and 11% per year.²²⁹ If, as is usually the case, the firm does not pay out the due amount, the same amount accrues to the nominal value of liquidation preferences,²³⁰ cumulating over

²¹⁹ See *supra* text preceding note 141.

²²⁰ See Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 807–08.

²²¹ *Id.* at 808.

²²² See *supra* text following note 210.

²²³ See *supra* text preceding note 124 and corresponding text.

²²⁴ Recall that the doctrinal construct defining what private ordering can achieve when shaping the attributes of shares, including the prohibition against *societas leonina*, is mandatory corporate law. See *supra* text following note 155. Thus, it does not allow for any circumvention, including through shareholder agreements. See *supra* note 87 and accompanying text. Consistent with this, scholars acknowledge that, based on the currently dominant interpretation of legal texts, liquidation preferences are exposed to the risk of being declared null and void. Cf. Agstner et al., *supra* note 12, at 429 (describing the restrictive majority interpretation). Similarly, notaries notice that these arrangements are only allowed within the limits resulting from the prohibition against *societas leonina*. See chiefly, Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *supra* note 206.

²²⁵ See Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 809.

²²⁶ *Id.* at 809–10 (noting that “in a hypothetical court case a judge following the mandatory constraints theory would check whether such a contractual provision is in fraud of the law and thus invalid.”).

²²⁷ See *supra* notes 203–206 and corresponding text.

²²⁸ See MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 490–91. To be sure, in addition to automatic dividends, U.S. VC deals also grant the VCF the right to receive “priority dividends,” implying that, should the VC-backed firm declare and distribute any dividends, the VCF would have the right to receive a predetermined amount of such dividends for each of his convertible preferred shares before the entrepreneur may receive any dividend. *Id.* at 484–86. But because VC-backed firms almost never declare and distribute dividends, VCFs can be expected to factor in the basic insignificance of this provision for the economics of the deals. In light of this, and due to space constraints, we omit analyzing these arrangements here.

²²⁹ *Id.* at 491–92.

²³⁰ *Id.* at 490–91.

time²³¹ and becoming payable in the case of a liquidity event.²³² Automatic and cumulative dividends thus add an interest-like time-value-of-money adjustment to VCFs' liquidation preferences.²³³

These arrangements are simply off-limits under both German and Italian corporate laws. This is due to several reasons that are nearly identical in the two jurisdictions.

Shares as equity interests incorporate a residual claim to future cash flows.²³⁴ These cash flows, in turn, are inherently linked to the firm's fortunes. Consistent with E.U. corporate law,²³⁵ shareholders may receive dividends only out of realized profits. Any arrangement that introduces certainty into shareholder returns is considered incompatible with the inherently uncertain nature of equity ownership.²³⁶

This characterization of equity claims holds despite German and Italian corporate laws permitting hybrid instruments.²³⁷ Such instruments allow for debt conversion into equity but prohibit the resulting equity stakes from carrying guaranteed payment claims.

In Germany a distinction must be made between AGs and GmbHs: the regime governing AGs prohibits contractual "commitments to pay interests to shareholders,"²³⁸ which scholars unanimously interpret as applicable to any arrangement that grants a shareholder the right to receive a fixed return on their equity investment,²³⁹ including in the form of automatic dividends.²⁴⁰ The rules for GmbHs are more nuanced. On their face, they allow for automatic dividends,²⁴¹ because they permit the distribution of dividends regardless of the companies' annual performance, subject only to capital maintenance rules.²⁴² However, these rules and the applicable accounting standards permit dividend payments regardless of the realization of

²³¹ *Id.* at 490.

²³² To be sure, the obligation to pay accrued dividends may be triggered by the firm's decision to distribute dividends to common shareholders. But this possibility is for business reasons obviously rather remote. It is much more likely that a liquidity event will trigger that obligation instead. *Id.* at 491.

²³³ *Id.* On liquidation preferences, see *supra* text corresponding to notes 174–185.

²³⁴ See, §§ 1 para. 2, 8 para. 4, and 60 para. 1 *AktG* and §§ 5 paras. 1 and 3, 29 para. 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.). As to Italy, see art. 2350, *codice civile* (It.) (laying down a general principle that is held applicable to both SPAs and SRLs). See *supra* note 140 and accompanying text.

²³⁵ E.U. company law requires that stock corporations pay dividends out of earnings or retained earnings. See Directive 2017/1132 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 14 June 2017 relating to certain aspects of company law, arts. 56–57, 2017 O.J. (L 169) 46.

²³⁶ As to German corporate law, cf. KARSTEN SCHMIDT, *GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT* 515 (4th ed. 2002) (stating that equity shares "typically" do not carry fixed interest entitlements). As to Italian corporate law, see, e.g., Sfameni, *supra* note 204, at 82–84 (stating that the very concept of shares is incompatible with any form of fixed remuneration and that Italian corporate law "does not allow for hybrid types of shares") (our own translation).

²³⁷ German corporate law allows AGs to issue convertible bonds, participating bonds, and participating rights. See § 221 *AktG* (Ger.). Italian corporate law allows SPAs to issue convertible bonds. See art. 2420, *codice civile* (It.). Italian corporate law also allows SPAs to issue "participating financial instruments." See art. 2346, comma 6, *codice civile* (It.). These securities, however, are of limited use in this context chiefly because they cannot incorporate the right to vote in the general shareholder meeting.

²³⁸ § 57 para. 2 *AktG* (Ger.).

²³⁹ See, e.g., Tim Drygala, § 57, in 1 *KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, para. 129 (Wolfgang Zöllner & Ulrich Noack eds., 3d ed. 2011); and Walter Bayer, § 57 in 1 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, para. 202 (Wulf Goette & Mathias Habersack eds., 5th ed. 2019).

²⁴⁰ See Walter Bayer, § 57, in 1 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, para. 96 (Wulf Goette & Mathias Habersack eds., 5th ed. 2019).

²⁴¹ Jens Ekkenga, § 29, in 1 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG*, para. 92 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

²⁴² § 30 para 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (stipulating that "[t]he assets which the company requires to maintain its share capital may not be paid out to the shareholders"). According to the prevailing interpretation, this provision prohibits any distribution to shareholders if it would push equity below the minimum capital amount. See, e.g., Sebastian Mock, § 29, in *KOMMENTAR ZUM GESETZ BETREFFEND DIE GESELLSCHAFTEN MIT BESCHRÄNKTER HAFTUNG*, paras. 229–32 (Lutz Michalski et al. eds., 4th ed. 2003).

annual profits only if the firm has established free profit or capital reserves and these reserves are (partly) dissolved in a shareholder resolution.²⁴³ As a consequence, no contractual arrangement can make sure that the VCF will always receive a fixed remuneration of its investment through automatic dividends.

Italian corporate law, in turn, bans automatic dividends through an explicit provision and an interpretation combining several doctrines. The explicit provision stipulates that a company cannot distribute any unrealized profits that do not “result from regularly approved annual accounts.”²⁴⁴ No company can commit to distributing dividends unless these two requirements are met. Furthermore, scholars agree that arrangements granting shareholders the right to receive a fixed interest or a guaranteed return are incompatible with the function of the corporate contract.²⁴⁵ Such arrangements would in fact curtail the “natural” shareholder’s exposure to equity risk.²⁴⁶ These arrangements would also clash with the prohibition against *societas leonina*.²⁴⁷ Given the foundational nature of the provisions and concepts on which these doctrines rest, the resulting regime applies irrespective of the firm’s organizational form.²⁴⁸

In addition, both German and Italian corporate laws impose procedural obstacles. Under German corporate law, dividends can only be paid out following a shareholder resolution on the allocation of any ascertained surplus.²⁴⁹ Any deviations from this regime are categorically ruled out in the AG.²⁵⁰ Similarly, for GmbHs an annual *ad hoc* decision is required,²⁵¹ implying that automatic distributions are not permitted. In Italy, SPAs can only distribute dividends once the shareholder meeting approves the annual accounts that ascertain profits for a given year and resolves on dividends.²⁵² Arrangements that seek to bypass this process, for instance by granting the right to receive a fraction of dividends regardless of any shareholder meeting resolution, are null and void.²⁵³ The regime for SRLs is more flexible but leads to the same practical outcome. In principle, the firm’s charter can assign a right to receive dividends *ad personam* or even incorporate it into shares.²⁵⁴ These rights allow the shareholder to claim dividends regardless of any corporate resolution on their distribution, but not regardless of a shareholder resolution on annual accounts that declares the existence of profits.²⁵⁵

The requirement under German and Italian corporate laws that dividend distribution be contingent on profits also rules out cumulative dividends. In fact, despite the absence of any

²⁴³ For details see Jens Ekkenga, § 29, in 1 MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG, paras. 92–94 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds. 4th ed. 2022).

²⁴⁴ See art. 2433, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.). This provision is part of the regime of SPAs, but the SPAs provisions on the approval of annual accounts govern the annual accounts of any type of company.

²⁴⁵ See *supra* text accompanying notes 153–156.

²⁴⁶ See *supra* text preceding note 153.

²⁴⁷ See, e.g., SFAMENI, *supra* note 204, at 76–85. On the prohibition against *societas leonina*, see *supra* text accompanying note 155.

²⁴⁸ See *supra* text following note 83.

²⁴⁹ See §§ 58 para. 3, 174 *AktG* and §§ 29 para. 2, 46 no. 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.), respectively.

²⁵⁰ Jens Koch, § 174 in AKTIENGESETZ, *supra* note 117, at para. 2 (confirming the mandatory competence of the annual shareholder meeting).

²⁵¹ See Kristian Kersting, § 29, in GMBHG, para. 46 (Ulrich Noack et al. eds., 23rd ed. 2022) (representing the majority position that an annual decision on the allocation of the surplus is mandatory).

²⁵² See art. 2433, commi 1, 2, *codice civile* (It.).

²⁵³ Cf. Enrico Ginevra, *La partecipazione azionaria*, in DIRITTO, *supra* note 151, at 290, 299 (arguing that what corporate law admits are rather private ordering solutions aimed to grant a shareholder the right to receive a predetermined fraction of the dividends that the firm may have decided to distribute).

²⁵⁴ See *supra* note 149.

²⁵⁵ Cf. Daccò, *La s.r.l.: la struttura finanziaria*, in DIRITTO, *supra* note 151, at 660, 672 (enumerating a number of private ordering solutions granting a shareholder a preferential right *ad personam* in the allocation of the company’s profits or the distribution of dividends, all of which postulating a shareholder resolution approving the company’s annual accounts).

explicit ban in either jurisdiction,²⁵⁶ the corporation must have a sufficient surplus to cover cumulative dividend payments.

Both corporate law regimes subject automatic and cumulative dividends to absolute prohibitions,²⁵⁷ thus ruling out not only U.S.-style arrangements and their functionally equivalent solutions, but any arrangement that, irrespective of its design, leads to the result of granting shareholders the right to receive a payout independent of firm performance. In fact, the broad scope of corporate law's prohibition against AGs paying interest on shareholders' equity investment rules out any alternative arrangement to this effect.²⁵⁸ In addition, the capital maintenance requirements catch any inadmissible distribution from the guaranteed capital of both the AG and the GmbH, regardless of the form they take.²⁵⁹ Italian corporate law takes an equally broad approach,²⁶⁰ reflecting the broad operational scope of the doctrines based on the essential characteristics of the corporate contract and the prohibition against *societas leonina*.²⁶¹

v. Anti-dilution Provisions

Unconverted convertible preferred shares in U.S. VC deals benefit from anti-dilution charter provisions. These provisions aim to mitigate the risk that the VCF may be economically diluted in so-called down-rounds—that is, the infusion of additional equity at a share price

²⁵⁶ German corporate law actually sees cumulative dividends as the default solution for preferred shares without voting rights when they take the form of advance dividends. See § 139 para. 1 sentence 3 *AktG* (Ger.), (according to which “[u]nless stipulated otherwise in the bylaws, an advance dividend is to be paid in addition” to the regular dividend). Furthermore, scholars conclude that in both the AG and the GmbH even preferred shares that carry voting rights can incorporate the right to receive cumulative dividends. See, e.g., Silja Maul, § 3 *Die Aktie*, in BECK'SCHES HANDBUCH DER AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT, para. 55 (Florian Drinhausen & Hans Martin Eckstein eds., 3d ed. 2018); and Peter Ulmer & Matthias Casper, § 5, in GROS KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHGESETZ, para. 186 (Mathias Habersack et al. eds., 2d ed. 2016), respectively for the AG and the GmbH. However, any preferential dividends, whether advance or additional, can only be paid out once the corporation generates sufficient profits.

²⁵⁷ See *supra* text preceding note 36.

²⁵⁸ See *supra* note text accompanying 239–240.

²⁵⁹ §§ 57 para. 1 sentence 1 *AktG* and § 30 para. 1 sentence 1 § *GmbHG* (Ger.). For the vast jurisprudence on the comprehensive scope of the statutory prohibitions see, e.g., Holger Fleischer § 57, in KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, paras. 11–28 (Karsten Schmidt & Markus Lutter eds., 5th ed. 2024); Dirk Verse § 30, in 1 SCHOLZ GMBHG, paras. 18–23 (13th ed. 2022).

²⁶⁰ On the latitude of the prohibition against any arrangements seeking to grant a shareholder the right to receive a payout regardless of the firm's profitability, see Assonime, Circolare No. 11 of May 6, 2013, <https://www.assonime.it/attivita-editoriale/circolari/Pagine/Circolari.aspx> (describing what private ordering can achieve when defining the attributes of shares issued by SME SRLs); Consiglio Notarile del Triveneto, Orientamento No. I.NO.2 of Sept. 2018, <https://www.notaitriveneto.it/dettaglio-massime-triveneto-277-in---srl-pmi.html#inizio> (same).

²⁶¹ See, e.g., SFAMENI, *supra* note 204, at 94. Some scholars argue that a shareholder can be legally granted the right to receive a fraction of the realized profits as dividends, provided that: (a) the general meeting has regularly approved the firm's annual accounts and the payment of such dividend is in line with the creditor protection regime (as outlined *supra* text preceding note 252); (b) the general shareholder meeting does not resolve *not to distribute* dividends. For a discussion, see *Id.*, *supra* note 204, at 46–47. Similarly, other scholars argue that contracting parties can include a provision in the firm's charter stipulating that, if the firm has made a profit in a specific year, the VCF has the right to receive it as a dividend, provided, however, that this arrangement does not require the shareholder meeting to distribute all the profits or retain all the profits and, thus, leaves the shareholder meeting's discretion in deciding how to use the firm's profits unprejudiced at least in part. See ZANONI, *supra* note 14, at 154–55. Yet, even assuming these arrangements do not contrast with the essential feature of the corporate contract and the prohibition against *societas leonina*, they are clearly less functional than their U.S. counterparts. The first arrangement makes dividend distribution contingent on a shareholder resolution, implying that the shareholder meeting has a veto power. The second leaves the VCF's right to receive a payout contingent on realized profits.

lower than the VCF paid in a previous funding round.²⁶² Importantly, anti-dilution provisions determine the automatic adjustment of the conversion price of the shares,²⁶³ which implies, in turn, that they are self-enforcing. In addition, the VCF's control and cash-flow rights are preserved without the need for any additional investment. Such provisions can imply a significant shift in value from the entrepreneur to the VCF,²⁶⁴ which is crucial for mitigating the risk of expropriation that VCFs face in subsequent financing rounds due to "trilateral bargaining" dynamics²⁶⁵ or, simply, the new financiers' ambition to price shares as low as possible.²⁶⁶

German and Italian corporate laws do not allow for the adoption of these arrangements. The main reason is that German and Italian corporate laws ban U.S.-style conversion rights altogether.²⁶⁷

In Germany, contracting parties have devised alternative arrangements: shareholder agreements allocate additional shares to the VCF to compensate for (real or seeming) dilution.²⁶⁸ However, German corporate law prohibits firms from issuing shares below par.²⁶⁹ Thus, the alternative arrangements found in German VC deals cannot protect the VCF from economic dilution risk by assigning additional shares to the VCFs without any further capital contribution. Instead, these arrangements typically predetermine the steps to be taken, with the entrepreneur's cooperation, to approve a new share issuance. More specifically, the entrepreneur is obliged to vote in favor of the required shareholder meeting resolution and waive their pre-emptive rights and their right to challenge the resolution for stipulating an "unreasonable low" price for the newly issued shares.²⁷⁰ Transactional practice appears to reflect these prescriptions.²⁷¹

²⁶² For an overview of the transactional features of these provisions, see MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 528–77. Transactional practice knows both "full-ratchet" and "weighted-average" anti-dilution provisions. Full-ratchet anti-dilution provisions adjust the conversion price to match the price of the newly issued shares in the down-round, regardless of the number of newly issued shares. *Id.* at 556–59. Weighted-average anti-dilution provisions adjust the conversion price by an amount intended to offset the dilution in the implied value of the convertible preferred shares issued in the down-round. *Id.* at 559–71.

²⁶³ See FELD & MENDELSON, *supra* note 101, at 62–63 (describing the mechanics of anti-dilution provisions).

²⁶⁴ See MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 558 (stressing that this is the case, particularly for full-ratchet anti-dilution provisions: see *supra* note 262).

²⁶⁵ See Erik Berglöf, *A Control Theory of Venture Capital Finance*, 10 J. L. ECON. & ORG. 247, 249 (1994).

²⁶⁶ See Robert P. Bartlett, III, *Venture Capital, Agency Costs, and the False Dichotomy of the Corporation* 54 UCLA L. REV. 37, 78–80 (2006).

²⁶⁷ See *supra* text accompanying 142–160.

²⁶⁸ See Weitnauer, *supra* note 148, at B.8.

²⁶⁹ See § 9 para. 1 *AktG* and § 14 para. 2 *GmbHG* (Ger.).

²⁷⁰ See WEITNAUER, *supra* note 148, at B.8.1. § 255 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.) grants shareholders the right to challenge that resolution. For details, see, e.g., Jan Schürnbrand & Dirk Verse, § 186 in 4 MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, para. 92 (Wulf Goette & Mathias Habersack eds., 5th ed. 2021). This regime applies by analogy to GmbHs. See, e.g., Jan Lieder, § 55 in 3 MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG, para. 142 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022). The recently introduced § 255 para. 4 *AktG* (Ger.) shields resolutions excluding shareholders' preemptive rights from avoidance actions. However, it does not fully neutralize litigation risk that may distort the economic operation of anti-dilution provisions, since shareholders remain entitled to pursue compensatory claims.

²⁷¹ See Stefan-Ulrich Müller, *O. 2. Beteiligungsvertrag – Investment Agreement § 2 (2)*, in BECK'SCHES FORMULARBUCH ZIVIL-, WIRTSCHAFTS- UND UNTERNEHMENSRECHT (Robert Walz ed., 5th ed. 2022) (providing standard templates of the relevant contractual provisions); Christoph H. Seibt, *F.V.1 Beteiligungsvertrag – Investment Agreement*, in BECK'SCHES FORMULARBUCH MERGERS & ACQUISITIONS para. 1 (Christoph H. Seibt ed., 4th ed. 2025) (same).

These alternative arrangements, however, are inferior to U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions. To begin with, they may be null and void. Unlike practitioners,²⁷² scholars stress that the logic of anti-dilution provisions implies a potentially significant transfer of value from the entrepreneur to the VCF²⁷³ and, hence, the entrepreneur's partial expropriation (in the legal sense).²⁷⁴ Therefore, the arrangements that replicate U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions, whatever their design, can clash with the general private law doctrine of immorality that translates the constitutional property rights protections into operable private law.²⁷⁵ This doctrine also applies to private ordering solutions in shareholder agreements,²⁷⁶ with the same consequences.

Furthermore, these alternative arrangements require the cumbersome procedure we have just described, which, however, may not unfold as expected due to the pre-emptive rights shareholders enjoy when the company issues new shares.²⁷⁷ Anti-dilution provisions that work by adjusting the allocation of new shares can only function if the VCF and the new investor, but not the entrepreneur, may subscribe to the newly issued shares. Yet, such an outcome relies on the entrepreneur's prior and binding waiver of pre-emptive rights. German VC deals can achieve the logic of the corresponding U.S.-style arrangements²⁷⁸ and make the entrepreneur the only shareholder bearing the consequences of any decrease in firm value occurring between financing rounds only if the waiver is irrevocable.²⁷⁹ Yet, German corporate law, in line with E.U. rules,²⁸⁰ stipulates that shareholders of an AG may not permanently waive their pre-emptive rights, but must do so separately for each individual share issuance.²⁸¹ To be sure, authorized capital may provide some leeway. Entrepreneurs can waive pre-emptive rights at the time the shareholder meeting authorizes the board to issue new shares for a given time period.²⁸² If, however, the entrepreneur does not confirm the waiver at the time (authorized) shares are issued,²⁸³ the company can only give effect to the anti-dilution provision if excluding

²⁷² Practitioners take a more favorable position and consider even full-ratchet anti-dilution provisions viable, either generally or in the presence of a sunset clause. See Philip Martinius & Julia Stubert, *Venture-Capital-Verträge und das Verbot der Hinauskündigung*, 15 BETRIEBS-BERATER 1977, 1981 (2006) and Weitnauer, *supra* note 132, at para. 131, respectively.

²⁷³ See *supra* text accompanying note 265.

²⁷⁴ See *supra* note 84.

²⁷⁵ See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 685, 696 (explaining the doctrinal treatment of full-ratchet and weighted-average anti-dilution provisions).

²⁷⁶ German courts have applied the private law doctrine to provisions leading to a (nearly) full economic expropriation of shareholders regardless of whether the relevant arrangements are located in the charter or in shareholder agreements. *BGH*, July 9, 1990, 112 BGHZ 103, 107 (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Hans-Joachim Priester, *Drag along- und Call-Option-Klauseln in der GmbH-Satzung*, in *FESTSCHRIFT FÜR KLAUS J. HOPT ZUM 70. GEBURTSTAG AM 24. AUG. 2010: UNTERNEHMEN, MARKT UND VERANTWORTUNG* 1039, 1049 (Stefan Grundmann et al. eds., 2010) (recalling the decision on expulsion clauses by the German supreme court and applying it to drag-along rights provisions in general, whether featuring in the charter or in a shareholder agreement).

²⁷⁷ See §§ 186 para. 1 and 203 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.).

²⁷⁸ See *supra* text preceding note 262.

²⁷⁹ See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 671 (explaining that waiving pre-emptive rights is essential for achieving effective protection from economic dilution).

²⁸⁰ See Directive (EU) 2017/1132, arts. 4(1), 72(1), 2017 O.J. (L 169) 46.

²⁸¹ § 186 para. 3 *AktG* (Ger.) (stipulating that the pre-emptive right for newly issued shares may be precluded only in the resolution adopted to increase the share capital).

²⁸² This is the uncontested position of the scholarship. See, e.g., Joachim Herfs, *Bezugsrechtsemission in UNTERNEHMENSFINANZIERUNG AM KAPITALMARKT* para. 5.55 (Mathias Habersack et al. eds., 4th ed. 2019).

²⁸³ Such a scenario may arise if the capital raised in a subsequent funding round exceeds the amounts anticipated when the original VC contract was entered into the authorized capital foreseen at this stage will not suffice to serve anti-dilution provisions, creating the need for a new capital issuance without pre-emptive rights

the entrepreneur's pre-emptive rights can be deemed necessary and proportionate to pursue the company's interest.²⁸⁴ While some commentators argue that the VC-backed firm's need for additional funding may justify excluding pre-emptive rights,²⁸⁵ others hold that safeguarding the smooth functioning of anti-dilution provisions does not pass this test. In their view, the exclusion does not protect the company's interest but only the personal interest of the VCF not to have its voting and cash-flow rights diluted.²⁸⁶ These commentators consider general waivers of pre-emptive rights as void and stress that anti-dilution provisions may, therefore, not always function as intended.²⁸⁷ To be sure, the regime governing pre-emptive rights applies to any firm irrespective of its organizational form,²⁸⁸ but the restrictions we discuss in this paragraph only apply to AGs, while commentators agree that a GmbH's charter can include permanent waivers of pre-emptive rights.²⁸⁹

In addition, these alternative arrangements are prone to litigation due to the remedies available to shareholders if the company issues shares at an unreasonably low price.²⁹⁰ Irrespective of the firm's organizational form, German corporate law provides that, through a so-called avoidance action, shareholders can challenge the shareholder resolution approving a new share issuance without pre-emptive rights if the price of the newly issued shares is unreasonably low.²⁹¹ This regime aims to prevent any dilution of existing shareholders and therefore clashes with the very essence of anti-dilution provisions. It invites entrepreneurs to strategically allege and litigate a low price in down-rounds, thus compromising the effectiveness of anti-dilution provisions in their core use case.²⁹² Even if the time limit for the avoidance action against the authorizing shareholder resolution has long passed,²⁹³ the

at a stage where consensus on the way forward may have been lost amongst the "old" VCF and the entrepreneur. Beyond prediction errors, an effective dilution protection may also be unachievable because of the cap on authorized capital ("one half of the capital stock given at the time of the authorization:" § 202 para. 3 sentence 1 *AktG* (Ger.)). Finally, a need to issue new capital in the vicinity of down-rounds may also occur because the authorization of capital must be renewed at least every five years. See § 202 para. 1 sentence 1 *AktG* (Ger.). Practitioners indeed report that parties may not always agree on the waiver of pre-emptive rights in subsequent funding rounds. See, e.g., Christoph von Einem et al., 'Weighted Average' – *Verwässerungsschutz bei Venture Capital-Beteiligungen*, 59 DER BETRIEBS-BERATER 2702, 2704 (2004).

²⁸⁴ The leading German case is the decision issued in the "*Kali + Salz*" case. See BGH, 13 Mar. 1978, 71 BGHZ 40 (Ger.). The doctrine is derived from fundamental corporate law principles and case law has followed *Kali + Salz* consistently. See Tobias H. Tröger, TREUPFLICHT IM KONZERNRECHT 252–85 (2000). This doctrine was conceived with respect to AGs. Yet, because it rests upon fundamental corporate law principles, it also applies to GmbHs. See, also for further references to case law and legal scholarship, Lieder, *supra* note 270, at paras. 102–03.

²⁸⁵ Martinus & Stubert, *supra* note 272; Nicholas Ziegert, DER VENTURE CAPITAL-BETEILIGUNGSVERTRAG. TYPISIERUNG, AMERIKANISIERUNG UND FLEXIBILISIERUNGSELEMENTE EINES FINANZIERUNGSVERTRAGES 199 (2005).

²⁸⁶ Jens Ekkenga, § 186, in KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, paras. 78–79 (Ulrich Noack & Wolfgang Zöllner eds., 3rd ed. 2019) (arguing that the interest of individual shareholders does not suffice to legitimize a waiver of preemptive rights).

²⁸⁷ KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 672–78.

²⁸⁸ Scholars and case law converge in affirming that the regime laid down in §§ 186 para. 1 and 203 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.) applies by analogy to the GmbH. See Lieder, *supra* note 270, at paras. 102–03; and BGH, Apr. 18, 2005, 59 WM 1101 (Ger.).

²⁸⁹ This position is almost uncontested. See, e.g., Joachim Tebben, § 55, in 3 SCHOLZ GMBHG, para. 64, 69 (13th ed. 2025); Walter Bayer, § 55, in GMBH-GESETZ, para. 22 (Marcus Lutter & Peter Hommelhoff eds., 21st ed. 2023).

²⁹⁰ See *supra* text accompanying note 270.

²⁹¹ For references, see *supra* note 270.

²⁹² KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 680–84.

²⁹³ The avoidance action must be brought within one month after the resolution was adopted. See §§ 246(1) and 255(3) *AktG* (Ger.). The same regime applies to GmbHs, albeit with some minor qualifications. Scholars and case law converge on this point. In the literature, see, e.g., Ingo Drescher, *Anh.* § 47, in 3 MÜNCHENER

entrepreneur may still request an injunction against the issuance of shares in the down-round on the grounds that the share price was unreasonably low.²⁹⁴

Against this backdrop, characterizing the enforcement of anti-dilution provisions as merely fraught with legal uncertainty—as practitioners do²⁹⁵—considerably understates the true extent of the problem.

In Italy, VC deals include several types of alternative arrangements to mimic U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions in the firm's charter.²⁹⁶ The most common ones stipulate that, in the event of a down-round, the company must pass a complementary resolution to issue the shares that will then be assigned to the VCF.²⁹⁷ That means that each shareholder typically has to waive their pre-emptive rights and vote in favor of the capital increase, with the VCF having to contribute the capital required to subscribe to the new shares at par value.²⁹⁸

This alternative arrangement is problematic irrespective of the VC-backed firm's organizational form. First, its validity is uncertain. One reason is that Italian corporate law sees private ordering solutions that allow one contracting party to receive shares without contributing anything *or* contributing “too little” with suspicion.²⁹⁹ To be sure, Italian blackletter corporate law permits that shares be issued for a contribution lower than their subscription price, provided that the total consideration paid up for all the newly issued shares is at least equal to the overall amount of the capital increase.³⁰⁰ Scholars, however, infer from blackletter corporate law one additional requirement: namely, the allotment of shares always requires a shareholder to pay up some consideration for their shares.³⁰¹ Yet, for anti-dilution

KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG, para. 348 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022). For case law, see RG, Feb. 25, 1939, 9 DEUTSCHES RECHT 720, 721 (1939).

²⁹⁴ BGH, Oct. 10, 2010, 164 BGHZ 241 (Ger.).

²⁹⁵ Rose & Partner – Rechtsanwaltliche und Steuerberater, *VC Investment Contracts in Germany (Rose & Partner Briefing Series)*, Feb. 13, 2023, <https://www.rosepartner.de/en/startup-vc-investment-contract-german-lawfirm.html#:~:text=Anti%2Ddilution%20in%20Germany&text=These%20determine%20whether%20and%20on,decline%20in%20the%20company's%20value> (flagging the significant legal risks affecting anti-dilution provisions).

²⁹⁶ See Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 796–98, 804 (discussing the structure of anti-dilution provisions in a sample of Italian VC-backed firms' charters). A relatively common variation of such arrangements, as they report (*id.*, at 805), grants the VCF a veto right on any capital increase. Yet, these arrangements cannot compare with anti-dilution provisions, which strike a very different balance between the interests of the VCF and the entrepreneur. In fact, anti-dilution provisions allow for a capital increase but protect the VCF from economic dilution without the need for it to contribute new capital. Thus, veto rights on capital increases, which can be understood as a bargaining chip to force renegotiations, are an inferior substitute for self-enforcing anti-dilution provisions.

²⁹⁷ *Id.* at 805.

²⁹⁸ *Id.* As a practical matter, these provisions assign a special right to the VCF through different techniques, depending on the VC-backed firm's organizational form. In SPAs, the VCF is issued shares of a special class that incorporate the relevant right. In SRLs, the VCF generally receives a special right *ad personam* (see *supra* note 149). In SME SRLs, the solution is akin to that adopted in SPAs. For details, see Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 186 of 7 Jan. 2020 “Clausole statutarie anti-diluizione,”* <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/186/>.

²⁹⁹ Drawing from various doctrines and several arguments, prominent scholars stress the importance of fair bargains in corporate ventures, especially regarding proportionality between individual shareholder contributions and the firm's overall capital. See, e.g., Giorgio Oppo, *Quesiti in tema di azioni e di strumenti finanziari*, in 1 IL NUOVO DIRITTO DELLE SOCIETÀ: LIBER AMICORUM GIAN FRANCO CAMPOBASSO 713, 717 (Pietro Abbadessa & Giuseppe B. Portale eds., 2006); and Paolo Ferro Luzzi, *La “diversa assegnazione delle azioni” (art. 2436, comma 4, c.c.)*, in *id.* 583, 588.

³⁰⁰ See Artt. 2436 commi 4 and 5 and 2468 comma 2 *codice civile* (It.). In other words, if a company issues two new shares with a subscription price of one euro each, one shareholder may contribute 0.5 euro if the other contributes 1.50 euro.

³⁰¹ See, e.g., MARIO CAMPOBASSO, DIRITTO COMMERCIALE, VOL. 2: DIRITTO DELLE SOCIETÀ 180 (9th ed. 2015).

provisions to work, the VCF has to receive additional shares without either paying up anything for them or by paying up at most a symbolic price. The alternative arrangement replacing U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions may, therefore, fail to meet the legal requirements that corporate law lays down for allotting newly issued shares.³⁰²

Second, this alternative arrangement may be null and void, because Italian corporate law is concerned with mitigating the potential “unfairness” of the value transfer from the entrepreneur to the VCF that such arrangement may cause.³⁰³ Some emphasize that such value transfers insulate the VCF from the firm’s risk and thus clash with the prohibition against *societas leonina*.³⁰⁴ Other scholars view anti-dilution provisions as capable of expropriating the entrepreneur (in the legal sense) and thus as hard to reconcile with the constitutional protection afforded to private property.³⁰⁵ Further, and somewhat relatedly, anti-dilution provisions have been said to be inconsistent with the “fair value principle.” In essence, this principle, stipulates that a shareholder who sells, or *a fortiori* is compelled to sell, their shares has the right to do so at a price no lower than the compensation they would be entitled to if they were to exercise their withdrawal right.³⁰⁶ The fair value principle applies irrespective of

³⁰² Scholars hint at these frictions. See, e.g., Awwad, *supra* note 298, at 180–81, 190–92.

³⁰³ See *supra* text preceding note 264.

³⁰⁴ In contributing to the academic debate on the matter, some notaries have voiced their concern about the validity of full-ratchet anti-dilution provisions (see *supra* note 262) and made the point mentioned in the text. See Lorenzo Salvatore, *Le startup innovative tra dato normativo e prassi contrattuale* in LE OPERAZIONI DI FINANZIAMENTO 1513, 1551 (Elisabetta Panzarini et al. eds., 2016).

³⁰⁵ See Amal Abu Awwad, *Il problema delle clausole «anti-dilutive»*, 44 NUOVE LEGGI CIVILI COMMENTATE 175, 191–92 (2021). For details on the constitutional protections on private property as a source of corporate law prescriptions, see *supra* note 84.

³⁰⁶ Under Italian corporate law, shareholders have, under specific circumstances, withdrawal rights. See artt. 2437, 2473, *codice civile* (It.). Statutory corporate law stipulates the criteria for the determination of the fair value of withdrawing shareholders’ shares: simplifying a bit, the divesting shareholder has the right to receive a price that reflects their pro rata share of the firm’s value. See artt. 2437-ter, comma 2, 2473, comma 3, *codice civile* (It.). This regime also applies, in SPAs, if a shareholder or the company redeems shares and, in SRLs, in cases of shareholder expulsion. See artt. 2437-sexies, 2473-bis, *codice civile* (It.). For further details, see e.g., The predominant view among scholars is that the provisions governing the determination of shares’ fair value in such cases are mandatory. See, e.g., Mario Stella Richter jr., *Diritto di recesso e autonomia statutaria*, 45 *Rivista del diritto commerciale* 389, 400 (2004). They are in fact thought of as a “minimum protection” of shareholders against opportunistic behavior. Drawing from the mandatory nature of those provisions, notaries, with the support of prominent scholars, have concluded that a shareholder is entitled to receive the fair value of their shares also in other cases in which the company or another shareholder have the right to redeem the shares, or the company has the right to expel a shareholder or to otherwise force them to divest. See Consiglio Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 88 of 22 Nov. 2005 “Clausole statutarie disciplinanti il diritto e l’obbligo di ‘covenanta’ delle partecipazioni.”* <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/88/>. See also Giuseppe B. Portale & Alessandra Daccò, *Criteri e modalità “penalizzanti” per il recesso del socio di minoranza nella società a responsabilità limitata*, 3 *Rivista di diritto societario* 22, 28 (2009). On the assumption that the regime determining the value of shares in the event of a redemption is mandatory, and that drag-along rights provisions are in their practical effects similar to redemption provisions (in that they enable one shareholder to cause another shareholder to divest), notaries have also argued that drag-along rights provisions are valid only if they include a proviso specifying the dragged-along shareholders shall receive “at least” the value that they would have received if they had exercised their withdrawal rights. *Id.* Courts then followed on that path. See Trib. Milano, 1 Apr. 2008 (It.). By the time of this court ruling, due also to the concurring theorization of the fair value of shares as the measure of the individual shareholder “property” in the firm (see *supra* note 84), the rule that protects fair value if a shareholder exercises their withdrawal right had already evolved into a wide-ranging principle—the fair value principle—that with time became an unquestioned component of Italian corporate law in action. For details on the evolution of this regime, see, e.g., Mario Notari, *Exit forzato ed equa valorizzazione: un binomio indissolubile?*, 20 *Analisi giuridica dell’economia* 383 (2021). This principle is regularly complied with in transactional practice. As the literature has reported as regards drag-along rights provisions, “the relevant charters constantly refer to the fair value determination, so that no contractual attempt can be observed to escape a principle that is clearly considered imperative.” Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 811. Scholars, notaries and courts alike

the firm's organizational form and the transaction's structure, as its scope is defined in functional terms.³⁰⁷

Third, the Italian regime governing pre-emptive rights significantly complicates the functioning of these alternative arrangements as it makes their self-enforcement a chimera. The proper functioning of anti-dilution provisions that work by adjusting the allocation of new shares requires the entrepreneur to waive their pre-emptive rights at the onset of the cooperation with the VCF.³⁰⁸ Under Italian corporate law, however, private ordering solutions excluding pre-emptive rights either are unviable, partly as a consequence of E.U. company law,³⁰⁹ or trigger mandatory requirements that would generate other impractical consequences. On the one hand, in SPAs, the shareholder meeting can pass a resolution that excludes pre-emptive rights only in specific instances, including when "the interest of the company so requires."³¹⁰ The interpretation of this statutory provision varies, with some scholars holding that the company has an interest in excluding pre-emptive rights only if this is "strictly necessary for the company's survival,"³¹¹ and others favoring a less stringent interpretation. This interpretation acknowledges that the subscription of shares by a third party is preferable to preserving pre-emptive rights if such a solution is itself instrumental to pursuing the interest of the company.³¹²

Further, scholars who have addressed the issue opine that excluding pre-emptive rights to allow for the smooth functioning of anti-dilution provisions would serve exclusively the VCF's interest. This exclusion would only protect the VCF from having its cash-flow and control rights diluted, and hence cannot be held to be instrumental, let alone strictly necessary, to the pursuit of the company's interest.³¹³ As a consequence, no private ordering solution can permanently rule out the entrepreneur's pre-emptive rights.

In SRLs, scholars point out that the relevant regime does not contemplate specific instances in which the firm's charter can exclude pre-emptive rights³¹⁴ and yet hold that private

invoke it in a variety of scenarios that go well beyond its initially defined scope. See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 153 of 17 May 2016 "Riscattabilità delle quote di s.r.l."*, <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/153/> (listing, in the text and the motivation, several heterogeneous arrangements subject to the fair value principle). And courts do not invoke it less frequently. For instance, case law has recently invoked it to curtail private ordering solutions, such as those including a contract-based cap on the price that a shareholder exercising their withdrawal right can claim. See Tribunale di Roma [Rome Court], 15 Jan. 2020 (It.).

³⁰⁷ According to scholars and practitioners, the fair value principle governs any transaction that causes or is even just capable of causing a transfer of value from one shareholder to another. See, e.g., Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *supra* note 306 (laying down the principle and accounting for its scope in functional terms). Scholars' inclination to apply the fair value principle beyond the area of private ordering solutions governing divesting transactions to encompass anti-dilution provisions confirms its breadth. Awwad, *supra* note 305, at 191–92. Practitioners take a similarly broad approach. See, e.g., Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 153*, *supra* note 306.

³⁰⁸ See *supra* text following note 277.

³⁰⁹ See *supra* note 280.

³¹⁰ See art. 2441, commi 4, 5, *codice civile* (It.) (our own translation).

³¹¹ See, also for references, *id.*, at 278 (arguing that in SPAs blackletter corporate law defines the instances in which private ordering can exclude preemptive rights, that these instances are a *numerus clausus*, and that the requirement that the exclusion of preemptive rights "is allowed if the interest of the company so requires" warrants the very strict interpretation reported in the text).

³¹² *Id.* at 278–79.

³¹³ See, e.g., Awwad, *supra* note 298, 1 at 85.

³¹⁴ Blackletter law generically provides that the firm's charter can include provisions authorizing the firm to increase its capital by offering its newly issued shares to third parties. See art. 2481-bis, *codice civile* (It.). For details, see Marco Speranzin, *DIRITTO DI SOTTOSCRIZIONE E TUTELA DEL SOCIO NELLA S.R.L.* 23–32 (2012). Scholars interpret this provision in relatively broad terms. See, e.g., Awwad, *supra* note 305, at 186. Practitioners

ordering enjoys some latitude in denying such rights,³¹⁵ including when this is necessary to allow for the smooth functioning of the arrangements aimed at protecting VCFs from economic dilution.³¹⁶ However, under Italian corporate law, any shareholder who has not voted in favor of a resolution that excludes pre-emptive rights has withdrawal rights,³¹⁷ and any ex ante waiver of these rights is null and void.³¹⁸ As scholars have stressed, such withdrawal rights enable the entrepreneur to hold up the VCF³¹⁹ and thus risk undermining the intended effect of insulating the VCF from economic dilution.

In the end, VCFs simply have no guarantee whatsoever that the capital increase on which the issuance of additional shares to them is contingent will ever take place. In other words, the alternative arrangements found in Italian VC deals are not self-enforcing.³²⁰ Nor would buy-sell agreements in shareholder agreements enabling VCFs and entrepreneurs to rebalance their equity positions as the changing circumstances require fare any better.³²¹

To conclude, the alternative arrangements delivering VCFs protection from economic dilution commonly found in German and Italian VC deals are of doubtful legality, prone to litigation, practically dysfunctional, and certainly not self-enforcing. It is apparent that they are inferior to U.S. anti-dilution provisions.

vi. Pay to Play Provisions

Pay-to-play provisions in the standard charter of U.S. VC-backed firms force VCFs to participate in subsequent financing rounds on a pro-rata basis.³²² If they don't participate in those rounds, VCFs see their shares automatically converted into either "shadow" preferred or common stock. This conversion strips them of some or all of the privileges attached to their

endorse this view. Cf. Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 156 of 17 May 2016* "Contenuto della clausola che consente alla maggioranza di escludere o limitare il diritto di opzione nelle s.r.l.," <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/156/>.

³¹⁵ For details, see Daccò, *supra* note 255, at 665–66.

³¹⁶ See, e.g., Awwad, *supra* note 305, at 185.

³¹⁷ See art. 2481-bis, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.).

³¹⁸ See art. 2473, *codice civile* (It.).

³¹⁹ Agstner et al., *supra* note 12, at 417; Awwad, *supra* note 305, at 187–89.

³²⁰ Cf. Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, at 805 (acknowledging the imperfections of these provisions due to the procedural steps required to deliver the protection the VCF had bargained for).

³²¹ One way out of the impasse could be, in theory, buy-sell agreements in shareholder agreements, which would enable VCFs and entrepreneurs to rebalance their equity positions as the changing circumstances require. In practice, however, these arrangements would only work if the VCF could buy a given fraction of the entrepreneur's shares at a low price. U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions protect the VCF by automatically adjusting the conversion price of its shares, thus, preventing dilution without requiring the injection of new capital (see *supra* text corresponding to note 227). Thus, resorting to buy-sell agreements to grant the VCF a similar protection requires contracting parties to design them in such a way that the price at which the VCF can buy the shares is low enough to make up for the excessively high valuation it had assigned to the firm in the first round of financing or the artificially low price that the entrepreneur has agreed upon with the new funder(s). That is, these arrangements would work only if they were to assign the VCF a call option with a strike price of, or near, zero (we discuss the regulatory constraints preventing contracting parties from doing that when analyzing the transplant of U.S.-style bad leaver provisions. See *infra* text accompanying notes 510–565). German corporate law, however, prevents contracting parties from freely setting the strike price (see *supra* note 270). Under Italian corporate law, such buy-sell agreements would be incompatible with the fair value principle—which applies irrespective of whether a given arrangement features in the firm's charter or in a shareholder agreement (see *supra* note 306). Moreover, these arrangements would not be self-enforcing. Consistent with these obstacles, to the best of our knowledge, transactional practice does not resort to such arrangements, which is a strong indicator that they are not a viable option.

³²² FELD & MENDELSON, *supra* note 101, at 53 (explaining that, following the burst of the Dot.com bubble, pay-to-play provisions are ubiquitous in U.S. VC deals).

original preferred shares—ranging from cash-flow rights (e.g., liquidation preferences) to control rights (e.g., veto and board appointment/removal powers).³²³

The procedure requires no cooperation between VCFs and entrepreneurs. The charter already contains a restated certificate of incorporation that authorizes directors to issue additional common shares and/or “blank check” preferred shares.³²⁴ Once the board resolves to issue additional shares within the new financing round, the firm delivers a participation notice to existing VCFs qua preferred shareholders.³²⁵ At the round’s close, non-participating VCFs see their preferred shares automatically flipped because the certificate itself defines the trigger and the post-trigger status of the VCF’s shares. Fiduciary standards may be invoked to safeguard fairness, but only under very limited circumstances.³²⁶

Pay-to-play provisions’ economic rationale is composite. Forcing incumbents with superior information to pay to keep their preferences turns their choice into a costly signal that helps outsiders overcome market noise.³²⁷ In addition, tying privileges to fresh money also restricts VCFs’ ability to withhold additional capital from an entrepreneur who wants to pursue potentially value-creating risky strategies that the VCF does not endorse.³²⁸ Pay-to-play requirements thwart incumbent investors’ ability to impede follow-on financings by virtue of their veto rights on share issuances.³²⁹ Furthermore, these arrangements compel VCFs who might otherwise free ride (especially within a syndicate) on someone else’s efforts to keep the firm afloat to either support the company or accept a “downgrade.”³³⁰ Moreover, by penalizing VCFs who do not take part in the financing round, pay-to-play provisions also reduce claim overhang (“legacy” liquidation preferences and other preferential rights) from previously issued convertible preferred shares,³³¹ making the cap table more attractive to new money in tough markets.³³² Practitioners overall view pay-to-play provisions as efficient solutions to address the complex dynamics unfolding as VC-backed firms raise new capital.³³³

³²³ *Id.*, at 54–55.

³²⁴ For a sample clause see NVCA, *Model Legal Documents – Certificate of Incorporation* (Oct. 2025), at 34–36, <https://nvca.org/document/nvca-model-certificate-of-incorporation-updated-oct-2025/>.

³²⁵ *Id.*

³²⁶ Preferred shareholders’ special rights are contractual in nature. See, e.g., Bratton & Wachter, *supra* note 134, at 1820 (“[p]referred stock sits on a fault line between two great private law paradigms, corporate law and contract law. It is neither one nor the other; rather, it draws on both.”). This means that these rights can be enforced only through legal actions grounded in the relevant provisions of the charter or shareholders’ agreement, and not through equitable claims based on fiduciary duties. As a result, preferred shareholders may challenge a pay-to-play financing via a fiduciary claim *only* if it goes beyond the mere (un)fairness of losing those special rights. For example, they could argue that the board failed to properly assess the share price in the financing round that triggered those provisions or did not adequately consider alternative financing options. See, e.g., *WatchMark Corp. v. ARGO Global Capital, LLC* (Del. Ch. 2004), a case where the Delaware Chancery Court upheld a merger-based pay-to-play recapitalization that stripped non-participating preferred shareholders of their special rights, holding that “no impairment” and 80% series-vote protective provisions in the charter did not give them a veto and that the financing was permissible where all preferred had an equal opportunity to participate.

³²⁷ Cf. Oskar Colombo, *The Use of Signals in New-venture Financing: A Review and Research Agenda*, 47 J. MGMT. 237 (2021) (discussing the multitude and relevance of signals associated with the injection of new financing in high-tech startups from incumbent and prospective financiers).

³²⁸ Cf. Spencer Williams, *Venture Capital Contract Design: An Empirical Analysis of the Connection Between Bargaining Power and Venture Financing Contract Terms*, 23 FORDHAM J. CORP. & FIN. L. 105, 134 (2017).

³²⁹ See PEARCE AND BARNER, *supra* note 101, at 146.

³³⁰ Gad Weiss, *Pay-to-Play*, 51 BYU L. REV. 1, 30–41 (2026).

³³¹ On liquidation preferences as senior financial claims, see *supra* text accompanying note 176. On the other preferential rights attached to convertible preferred shares, see *supra* text accompanying notes 228–233 and *infra* text accompanying notes 398–404, 433–435, and 634–636.

³³² On the importance of “cleaning the balance sheet” to attract new capital, cf. generally Kenneth Ayotte & David A. Skeel, Jr., *Bankruptcy Law as a Liquidity Provider*, 80 U. CHI. L. REV. 1557 (2013).

³³³ FELD & MENDELSON, *supra* note 101, at 53.

German corporate law fundamentally rejects the transplant of U.S.-style pay-to-play provisions. A verbatim transplant is unviable because the pay-to-play provisions typically found in U.S. VC deals presuppose that the VCF holds convertible preferred shares incorporating a number of special cash-flow and control rights, which is not the case in German VC deals.³³⁴ Pay-to-play provisions as we know them in U.S. VC deals are therefore necessarily absent in German VC contracts.

Yet, German VC deals include alternative arrangements that aim to replicate the preferential cash-flow and control rights embedded in the convertible preferred shares that are typical of U.S. VC deals.³³⁵ Arrangements that, similar to U.S.-style pay-to-play provisions, strip the VCF of its preferential rights would therefore be in principle possible. In practice, however, making them work faces at least two challenges. First, in both the AG and the GmbH, the charter performs an informative function to the benefit of would-be investors and external stakeholders, which rules out conditional changes.³³⁶ Moreover, changes to the rights of a class of shareholders requires either shareholder approval by special resolution of the affected class³³⁷ or even unanimous consent.³³⁸ U.S.-style pay-to-play provisions clash against these requirements of German corporate law, because the indispensable shareholder consent at future funding rounds can only be assured through shareholder agreements that require enforcement against recalcitrant founders in court.³³⁹

Second, the charter of an AG cannot require shareholders to make contributions beyond the par value at issuance.³⁴⁰ The charter of a GmbH may, *in principle*, contemplate such arrangements.³⁴¹ However, to become effective, the obligation to pay additional contributions needs to be specified in an *ad hoc* shareholder resolution,³⁴² requiring the cooperation of existing shareholders in future funding rounds and subjecting the resolution to judicial review under fiduciary standards that, while pending, would allow shareholders to refuse performance.³⁴³ Even if the charter stipulates the maximum amount of additional contributions and makes the potential future burden on shareholders transparent *ex ante*,³⁴⁴ a shareholder resolution effectuating the obligation remains mandatory.³⁴⁵ To conclude, self-executing, U.S.-style pay-to-play cannot be mimicked under German corporate law.

³³⁴ See *supra* text accompanying note 101–110.

³³⁵ See *supra* text accompanying notes 241–249.

³³⁶ See *supra* text accompanying note 144–145.

³³⁷ See § 179 para 3 *AktG* (Ger.) (requiring a double majority of 75% of the capital of the affected class represented at the meeting and 50% of the votes cast but allowing the charter to lower the required capital majority). For details see, e.g., Ursula Stein, § 179, in *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTIENGESETZ*, para. 202 (Wulf Goette et al. eds., 5th ed. 2021).

³³⁸ § 35 BGB (Ger.), immediately applicable only to associations, applies by analogy: see RG 12 Nov. 1912, 80 RGZ 385, 389; Joachim Tebben, § 53, in 3 *SCHOLZ GMBHG*, para. 48 (13th ed. 2025).

³³⁹ For the ensuing efficiency losses, see *supra* text accompanying note 39–41.

³⁴⁰ § 54 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.) (stipulating that the shareholders' obligation to pay contributions is limited to the par value of the shares issued). The provision is interpreted to prohibit any provisions obliging shareholders to make additional contributions. See Andreas Cahn & Philipp v. Spannenberg, § 54, in *BECKOGK AKTG* para. 24–25 (Feb. 1, 2022), Beck-Online.

³⁴¹ See §§ 26 para. 1, 27 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (allowing the charter to stipulate an unlimited shareholder obligation to make additional contributions upon a shareholder resolution). To be sure, the obligation to pay additional contributions on existing shares differs from subscribing to newly issued shares. However, the restrictions arguably apply *a fortiori* to such obligations in the charter.

³⁴² § 26 para. 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.). The requirement is non-waivable, 70 RGZ 326 (328–330); Walter Bayer, § 26, in *GMBH-GESETZ*, para. 8 (Marcus Lutter & Peter Hommelhoff eds., 21st ed. 2023).

³⁴³ See, e.g., Volker Emmerich, § 26, in 2 *SCHOLZ GMBHG*, para. 23 (13th ed. 2025).

³⁴⁴ § 26 para. 3 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (allowing the charter to restrict the obligation to pay additional contributions). On the transparency requirements, see, e.g., Carsten Schütz, § 26, in 2 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG*, para. 86–7 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 5th ed. 2025).

³⁴⁵ Holger Altmeppen, § 26, in *GMBH*, para. 18 (Holger Altmeppen ed., 11th ed. 2023).

While Italian corporate law takes a less oppositional approach to U.S.-style pay-to-play provisions, a pure and simple transplant of U.S.-style pay-to-play provisions into Italian VC deals is certainly precluded. Italian corporate law bans U.S.-style convertible preferred shares in both SPAs and SRLs (including SME SRLs),³⁴⁶ but allows contracting parties to design shares that somewhat approximate the cash-flow and control rights typical of those U.S. securities.³⁴⁷ Envisioning arrangements that lead to the downgrading of the VCF's shares is therefore in principle possible. Both in SPAs and SME SRLs different classes of shares can be created and the automatic conversion of shares of one class into shares of another class is permitted.³⁴⁸ Any private ordering exercise in this context must, however, comply with the general principles of corporate law.³⁴⁹ One such principle is that, much like under German corporate law,³⁵⁰ the charter cannot require shareholders to make additional contributions beyond those to which they initially agreed.³⁵¹ This requirement seems to have real bite on transactional practice: conversations with practitioners in fact suggest that they routinely use a somewhat vague wording intended to characterize the arrangements as not imposing that obligation.³⁵² A non-negligible layer of uncertainty therefore exists as to the enforceability of these arrangements, making them marginally less valuable to contracting parties than the standard pay-to-play provisions included in U.S. VC deals.³⁵³

VCFs and entrepreneurs operating in Germany and, to a lesser extent, in Italy try to work around the consequences of the unviability of U.S.-style pay-to-play provisions and the strictures of their local legal regimes through two types of alternative arrangements.

German VC deals typically include one of the following two types of alternative arrangements. First, shareholder agreements may include the commitment by the VCF to inject additional capital pro rata in future rounds and simultaneously impose sanctions for non-participation in the form of forfeiture of one or more rights. In some instances, this shareholder

³⁴⁶ See *supra* text accompanying notes 143–151.

³⁴⁷ See, e.g., *supra* text accompanying notes 219–227 and 296–298 (discussing the alternative arrangements in Italian VC deals mimicking U.S.-style liquidation preferences and anti-dilution provisions).

³⁴⁸ See, also for references, *supra* notes 149–150. Recall that: (1) the regime for SRLs does not admit classes of shares and, thus, there is no room to envision automatic conversion of shares of one class in shares of another class; (2) SME SRLs can issue different classes of shares; (3) practitioners seem to admit that these shares can convert (automatically) into shares of another class. See, also for references, *supra* note 151.

³⁴⁹ Federico Malgioglio, *Le categorie di azioni e strumenti finanziari nella nuova s.p.a.*, in NOTARIATO E NUOVO DIRITTO SOCIETARIO 112, at 122–23 (Franco Laurini ed., 2004).

³⁵⁰ See *supra*, text accompanying note 340.

³⁵¹ In addition to their capital contributions, shareholders may be required to undertake ancillary, non-monetary obligations, if these are set out in the articles of association, which must specify their content, duration, mode of performance, remuneration, and sanctions for breach (“prestazioni accessorie”). See art. 2345, *codice civile* (It.). Based on this blackletter provision, commentators have inferred a general principle of corporate law according to which the firm's charter may impose additional obligations on shareholders only in the form of *prestazioni accessorie*. Among others, see generally, Andrea Bartalena, *Le prestazioni accessorie*, in 1 TRATTATO DELLE SOCIETÀ PER AZIONI 801 (Giovanni E. Colombo & Giuseppe B. Portale eds., 2004). Commentators further argue that this regime also applies to any provision which, in substance, has the effect of achieving the same result. *Id.*

³⁵² Notaries read existing corporate law as enabling the charter to impose a “penalty” on shareholders for having failed to honor obligations stemming from the charter itself. For details, see *infra* note 517 and corresponding text. In principle, this “penalty” can take the form of an alteration of the preferential rights incorporated in the shares. Yet, imposing on a shareholder a penalty for not contributing additional capital may clash with the requirement mentioned in the text.

³⁵³ This principle is widely regarded as a key element of Italian corporate law. Scholars have often invoked this principle to justify their doubts about the validity of a wide range of provisions. See, e.g., Carlo Angelici, *Fra mercato e società: a proposito di venture capital e drag along*, 24 DIRITTO DELLA BANCA E DEL MERCATO FINANZIARIO I 19, 59 (2011) (concluding that for corporations the possibility of imposing obligations on shareholders is, in general, excluded).

agreement not only stipulates that the VCF will lose its right(s) but also includes voting covenants requiring the VCF and the entrepreneur to pass the necessary corporate resolution to effect any changes to the rights initially negotiated—ultimately altering (also) the VCF’s rights stemming from the charter.³⁵⁴ In other instances, the shareholder agreement conditions some of the very rights it confers on the VCF (such as those designed to mimic U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions³⁵⁵) on participation in future financing rounds, so that the non-participating VCF forfeits only those contractual benefits.³⁵⁶

Second, contracting parties can deploy “issue-side” pay-to-play provisions. Under such arrangements, the pressure and the reward come from access to the new round’s upgraded terms, not from an automatic downgrade of existing shares. Only VCFs that participate in the round receive the new senior securities; non-participants miss the benefits associated with the new share issuance and lose the contractual protections they had until then. These arrangements’ bite comes from who gets the new securities and from making contractual protections contingent on reinvestment, while any change of the ranking of the VCF’s shares (e.g., an actual downgrade of its existing shares) can only be achieved by a proper resolution at a shareholder meeting. In AGs, this design necessarily affects statutory pre-emptive rights—so any exclusion or limitation must be approved by the general meeting and supported by a board report justifying the decision, often using authorized capital.³⁵⁷ Whether GmbH shareholders have a general pre-emptive right is disputed.³⁵⁸ However, the requirements for allowing only a subset of the existing shareholders or new investors to subscribe to the newly issued shares are less restrictive than in the AG.³⁵⁹ Therefore, practice can rely on private-ordering pre-emptive rights in the shareholders’ agreement and allocation rules set in the company’s charter, which are then implemented by shareholder resolutions.

The alternative arrangements described above fare worse than the corresponding U.S. pay-to-play provisions.

The first solution—whatever form it takes—is weaker because it does not automatically change the status of the VCF’s shares. Although the arrangement can remove contract-based rights immediately, the cap table changes only if a shareholder resolution is passed. This precondition introduces execution risk in the form of delays or holdout dynamics. The external signal³⁶⁰ is weaker as well: in the U.S., non-participation triggers an automatic downgrade, whereas here the immediate effect is limited to the loss of contractual rights. To the extent that preferential rights are stipulated in the charter, their overhang persists until a shareholder vote occurs, which may happen too late or never. Depending on the significance of the (temporary) overhang, prospective new financiers may reprice their capital or even refrain from injecting any fresh resources into the firm. Enforcement is also harder: ensuring compliance with voting

³⁵⁴ See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 680 (describing and discussing this arrangement). See also Matthias Müller, *O.3 Gesellschaftervereinbarung – Shareholders’ Agreement*, in BECK’SCHES FORMULARBUCH ZIVILRECHT (5th ed., 2022); and Weitnauer, *Handbuch*, at para. 134.

³⁵⁵ See *supra* text accompanying notes 221–23.

³⁵⁶ Cf. Stephan Bank & Peter Möllmann, *Anhang 2: Shareholders’ Agreement in englischer Sprache*, in VENTURE CAPITAL AGREEMENTS IN GERMANY, art. 4, para. 11.2 (1st ed., 2017) (describing arrangements under which certain preferential rights stipulated in shareholders’ agreements—such as anti-dilution provisions—are made contingent upon additional payment in a down round and thus forfeited in the case of non-participation in that round).

³⁵⁷ §§ 186 paras 3–4 *AktG* (regulating subscription rights and laying down the procedure for waiving them, including the board report) and 203 para 2 *AktG* (Ger.) (defining the regime for authorized capital).

³⁵⁸ For a discussion of the doctrine and an overview of the literature and jurisprudence, see Jan Lieder, § 55, in 3 MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG, para. 102–103 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 5th ed. 2025).

³⁵⁹ § 55 para. 1 sentence 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (explicitly allowing the company to permit previous shareholders or other persons to join the company by making the subscription).

³⁶⁰ See *supra* text accompanying note 327.

covenants is fact-intensive and even injunctions compelling specific performance of promised voting behavior may be inadequate, as long as courts' speed does not match the timelines required to secure new financing rounds.

The second solution shifts pressure to the allocation and pricing of the new securities. It provides a carrot rather than the stick of an automatic downgrade. Non-participating VCFs retain their preferences, sending only a softer external signal.³⁶¹ Furthermore, overhang clears only partially because a full reset would require a shareholder resolution. Coordination of incumbents relies on inducements (e.g., improved terms for those who take part in the new round), which may require the VC-backed firm to offer participating investors more favorable terms than it would have to under a hard pay-to-play mechanism, thereby increasing the economic cost of the round. The highly formalized, prescriptive and potentially litigious issuance procedure at AGs, particularly if pre-emptive rights are excluded,³⁶² extends time-to-cash and introduces execution risk that prospective investors will discount into their valuation, if it does not cause them to abandon the transaction altogether. The bottom line is that this arrangement works as a comparable incentive device but trades speed and immediacy for process and procedural certainty. In sum, it fails to achieve results functionally equivalent to the U.S. model.

vii. Equity-based Compensation Schemes

In U.S. VC-backed firms, equity-based compensation plans are the standard response to the fact that entrepreneurs' and employees' optimal level of effort is non-contractible, giving rise to moral hazard problems.³⁶³ Most commonly, entrepreneurs receive restricted stock or restricted share units ("RSUs"), while employees are granted stock options.³⁶⁴ All three arrangements grant recipients an economic stake in the company's future value but work differently.

Restricted stock refers to shares issued to the founder at a nominal upfront price. The issued shares are subject to a vesting schedule, while the company has the right to repurchase any unvested portion at the original price, preventing the founder from capturing the appreciation of equity that has not yet vested.³⁶⁵ RSUs are a contractual promise by the company to the entrepreneurs to deliver a specified number of shares at a future date, typically upon vesting or upon hitting performance targets.³⁶⁶ No share is issued, and no exercise price is paid until vesting occurs.³⁶⁷ Stock options, in turn, give employees the right to purchase a

³⁶¹ See *supra* text accompanying note 327.

³⁶² For a description see, e.g., Michael Schlitt, *Kapitalerhöhung*, 53 ZGR 356 (2024) (highlighting the need to prepare a shareholders meeting with extensive reporting requirements and the prospect of shareholder suits challenging the validity and the conditions of the share issuance).

³⁶³ Cf. MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 94, at 329.

³⁶⁴ U.S. startups often grant employees stock options that may qualify as incentive stock options ("ISOs") under U.S. tax law. ISOs permit capital-gain taxation on disposition if statutory conditions (including holding periods) are met. See I.R.C. §§ 421(a), 422(a)(1) (2024) (providing favorable treatment for qualifying ISO exercises and requiring specified holding periods). MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 94, at 345–53. The discussion below addresses only the corporate-law mechanics of transplanting U.S.-style stock options into Germany and Italy and therefore brackets the ISO tax overlay.

³⁶⁵ See MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 94, at 354–356.

³⁶⁶ Yifat Aran, *The RSU Time Bomb: Regulating Startup Equity Compensation in the Unicorn Era* in RESEARCH HANDBOOK ON THE STRUCTURE OF PRIVATE EQUITY AND VENTURE CAPITAL (Brian Broughman & Elizabeth de Fontenay eds., Elgar Publishing, forthcoming, at 1.

³⁶⁷ *Id.*

specified number of shares at a predetermined exercise price, which is typically set at the fair market value of the company's common stock on the grant date.³⁶⁸

The board occupies an instrumental position in the design and implementation of equity-based compensation plans. It typically adopts the plan,³⁶⁹ determines its principal terms, approves individual grants, and oversees the issuance of shares upon exercise or vesting.³⁷⁰ Whether compensation takes the form of restricted stock, RSUs, or stock options, the board's central role gives the corporation substantial flexibility in tailoring incentives to entrepreneurs and employees.³⁷¹

German and Italian corporate law, in principle, allow for the transplant of U.S.-style equity-based compensation plans for founders and employees. Yet, both corporate law regimes make their implementation procedurally cumbersome, ultimately hindering VC-backed firms from scaling equity compensation plans as cost-effectively as in the U.S.

Restricted stock can be used in German and Italian VC deals, but in a watered-down form. The incentive function of restricted stock is contingent on the VC-backed firm's ability to buy back the founder's shares upon their departure under specified circumstances, including bad leaver scenarios.³⁷² Under German and Italian corporate laws, contracting parties cannot achieve equivalent practical results: neither regime permits, truly punitive buyback pricing, which weakens the incentive effect of such arrangements.³⁷³

RSUs also face obstacles. Treasury shares are commonly used to implement an RSU plan in AGs in German VC deals. Yet, Yet share buybacks needed to procure treasury shares remain subject to shareholder authorization that can last for a maximum of five years. Moreover, any authorization must be capped at ten per cent of the outstanding capital; repurchases exceeding that cap generally must be canceled within two years.³⁷⁴ These restrictions rule out continuous equity awards under a single large-scale plan. An alternative solution is to issue new shares using authorized capital and to waive pre-emptive rights.³⁷⁵ Yet, shareholder authorization is limited to five years,³⁷⁶ which implies periodic approval of comprehensive RSU programs by the general meeting. This requirement does not necessarily create substantial recurring administrative costs because the annual shareholder meeting will mostly rubberstamp the boilerplate resolution proposals. Yet, mandatory periodic renewal precludes the "evergreen" character that makes U.S. RSUs easy to scale.

³⁶⁸ In VC-backed companies, the fair market value is often derived by reference to the price paid for the most recent round of convertible preferred stock, with common stock valued at a substantial discount—frequently in the range of 80% to 90% off the preferred share's price. MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 94, at 334.

³⁶⁹ DGCL §§ 157–158 (authorizing a corporation's board to issue rights or options to purchase stock and to determine their terms).

³⁷⁰ DGCL § 141(a) (board manages business and affairs); *id.* § 157 (board power to create rights and options and set their terms, including permissible delegation); *id.* §§ 151–153 (board power to issue stock and fix consideration).

³⁷¹ The board's determination of consideration and its receipt complete "valid issuance" under Delaware law. DGCL § 152 (2024) (board fixes consideration and issues stock upon receipt); *id.*, §§ 151–153 (2024) (authority and mechanics of issuing shares upon satisfaction of consideration/conditions).

³⁷² See *supra* text accompanying note 365.

³⁷³ See *infra* Part III.C.2.vi, particularly text accompanying notes 509–549.

³⁷⁴ AktG § 71 para.1 no. 8 (Ger.).

³⁷⁵ Shareholders have statutory pre-emptive rights in capital increases, and their exclusion is possible if and only if statutory conditions and procedures are met. See §§ 186 para. 1, 3, 4, 203 para. 2 *AktG* (Ger.).

³⁷⁶ § 202 para. 1, 2 *AktG* (Ger.) (limiting the validity of any authorization to five years after entry in the company register of the relevant resolution).

The transplant faces similar, albeit somewhat less severe obstacles in GmbHs.³⁷⁷ However, the most significant constraint comes from notaries' involvement in share transfers and agreements that create an obligation for such transfers.³⁷⁸ Thus, both the adoption and the implementation of an RSU plan would require notarization, making the process costly and impractical.

German corporate law also stands in the way of U.S.-style stock options. In an AG, "real" stock option programs are typically serviced through conditional capital increases,³⁷⁹ which differ from authorized capital in that they do not involve the board. The relevant regime requires the general meeting resolution to clearly set the key parameters (beneficiaries, strike price, exercise periods) in advance³⁸⁰ and imposes quantitative ceilings on the conditional capital that can be used for employee option programs, currently standing at twenty per cent of the outstanding capital.³⁸¹ Moreover, stock options are subject to a four-year minimum vesting period.³⁸² Crucially, employee services do not qualify as a contribution to pay for the new shares,³⁸³ requiring cash-payments from the employees.³⁸⁴ This regime makes standard U.S.-style stock option plans difficult to design and even more difficult to implement. In GmbHs, the strictures that VCFs and entrepreneurs would face when attempting to transplant stock options resemble those discussed for RSUs,³⁸⁵ with "double" notarization requirements standing out as the most significant obstacle for any stock option plan of a non-trivial size.³⁸⁶

Italian corporate law creates similar hurdles for both RSU and stock option plans. In SPAs, two routes are available: one is via treasury shares repurchases. Such repurchases, however, are only allowed to the extent that (1) distributable profits or reserves exist in the company's balance sheet;³⁸⁷ (2) a shareholder meeting has authorized them, which it can do

³⁷⁷ In GmbHs, an RSU plan could, in principle, be serviced through treasury shares. A GmbH may repurchase its own shares only if they are fully paid in and the repurchase does not violate capital maintenance requirements. See § 33 para. 1–2 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (prohibiting the acquisition of fully-paid in shares only if the company can create a reserve equal to the purchase price without impairing stated capital or non-distributable reserves). Yet, it is often hard to fund a repurchase in such a manner at early-stage VC-backed firms, because startups typically lack the "free" balance-sheet capacity required to fund the expenditure without impairing legal capital. If RSUs are operationalized through the issuance of new shares at vesting, the capital increase regime requires a shareholder resolution. § 55 *GmbHG* (Ger.). This requirement may be manageable for occasional grants but becomes expensive and slow if mapped onto a significant employee RSU calendar. If GmbHs adopt an authorized capital mechanism designed to facilitate repeated issuances, the resulting delegation would still be limited to five years and to a volume of 50 per cent of the share capital existing at the time of authorization. The available volume may prove insufficient in fast-scaling firms. See § 55a(1) *GmbHG* (Ger.). The regime is thus less strict than in the AG but not entirely flexible. See *supra* text accompanying notes 374–376.

³⁷⁸ § 15 para. 3–4 *GmbHG* (Ger.).

³⁷⁹ § 192 para. 1 and para. 2 no. 3 *AktG* (Ger.) (allowing for conditional capital increases insofar as, inter alia, shares are allocated to the company's employees and members of its management).

³⁸⁰ §§ 193 para. 2 *AktG* (Ger.).

³⁸¹ § 192 para. 3 sentence 1 no. 3 *AktG* (Ger.) (limiting conditional capital for employee and management subscription rights/stock option programs to 20 per cent of the registered share capital).

³⁸² § 193 para. 2 no. 4 *AktG* (Ger.).

³⁸³ § 27 para. 2 *AktG* (Ger.) (stipulating that obligations to provide services cannot serve as contributions in kind). BGH, Feb. 16, 2009, 180 BGHZ 38 para. 9.

³⁸⁴ A capital increase from company funds (§ 207 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.)) is not an alternative. Even if the AG has sufficient capital reserves and retained earnings—which will rarely be the case at capital-constrained startups—the newly issued shares must be allocated to the existing shareholders pro rata, precluding employee participation plans. See § 212 *AktG* (Ger.) (entitling existing shareholders to the new shares in the ratio of their stake in the current capital stock and declaring any resolution adopted by the general meeting to the contrary null and void).

³⁸⁵ See also *supra*, text accompanying note 377.

³⁸⁶ See also *supra*, text accompanying note 378.

³⁸⁷ art. 2357, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.)

for periods of up to eighteen months.³⁸⁸ Clearly, these requirements are inconsistent with the implementation of a single, comprehensive RSU plan.

An alternative way to replicate a U.S.-style evergreen equity pool in SPAs is through board-approved capital increases in conjunction with a waiver of pre-emptive rights.³⁸⁹ Yet, the board may only issue new shares upon delegation by the shareholder meeting, which must be renewed every five years.³⁹⁰ A broad RSU program may therefore require periodic approval by the shareholder meeting, increasing costs and lowering functionality.

In SRLs, the transplant is even more problematic. One core friction is the baseline prohibition on share repurchases. While repurchases carried out to implement incentive plans allocating shares to employees are exempt from this prohibition,³⁹¹ according to legal scholars and practitioners, an SRL can buy back its own shares only to the extent that there are distributable profits or disposable reserves.³⁹² As a result, share buybacks to service a stock option plan in a cash-constrained VC-backed firm is likely bound to prove *de facto* unviable.

A capital increase approved by the board might be a more reasonable avenue. Practitioners offer a liberal reading of the relevant regime, concluding that, unlike SPAs', SRLs' charters can authorize the board to issue as many shares as it wants without being subject to specific time limits.³⁹³ In theory, this would make repeated employee-reserved issuances easier to administer over time.

Yet, SRLs' share transfers are subject to notarization requirements.³⁹⁴ This makes repeated, high-volume equity deliveries under an RSU plan costly, thus precluding the possibility that they can be administered procedurally as effectively as in Delaware-based VC-backed firms. Similar limitations also affect the replicability of RSU plans via so-called "work-for-equity" schemes—that is, employee remuneration via shares in exchange for services.³⁹⁵

The same obstacles make stock options similarly problematic under Italian corporate law.

Because German and Italian corporate law can make share-settled RSU and option programs procedurally expensive and costly to scale, VC-backed companies frequently shift from "real" equity delivery to contract-based "synthetic" equity. So-called "phantom stock plans" ("PSPs") and "virtual stock option plans" ("VSOPs") are the solution of choice to replicate RSUs and stock option plans in Italian and German VC deals.

A PSP is the closest contractual substitute for RSUs: the company grants "phantom" units that vest over time and that, upon the occurrence of an exit or other liquidity event, entitle the participant to receive an amount linked to the per-share equity value, without issuing shares

³⁸⁸ arts. 2357, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.).

³⁸⁹ art. 2441 *codice civile* (It.).

³⁹⁰ art. 2443 *codice civile* (It.).

³⁹¹ See *supra*, note 77 and corresponding text.

³⁹² The requirement that SMEs SRLs may buy back shares only to the extent that there are distributable profits or disposable reserves is not chiseled in blackletter corporate law. Rather, it is the result of the application of the relevant regime for SPAs by analogy. See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, "*Massima no. 179 of 27 November 2018 'Acquisto di quote proprie da parte di s.r.l. PMI'*", <http://consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/179/> (claiming that the regime for share buybacks in SPAs applies in general to SME SRLs but at the same time excluding the application of the regime for share buybacks in SPA as regards the five-year limitation and the requirement of a shareholder approval if there is a charter provision authorizing share repurchases generally).

³⁹³ *Massima n.75 of 22 November 2005 'Aumento delegato del capitale sociale nella s.r.l.'*", <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/75/>.

³⁹⁴ arts. 2468, 2470 *codice civile* (It.).

³⁹⁵ In SME SRLs, Italian corporate law also allows for employee remuneration via shares in exchange for services (so-called "work for equity"). See art. 27, Decreto Sviluppo (It.). Work for equity allows SME SRLs to pay individuals with real shares instead of cash for their work, but because it requires actual equity issuance and formal transfer steps, it cannot be used as a scalable substitute for U.S.-style RSU or stock option plans. In addition, it still runs through capital/instrument issuance mechanics, and thus it is still subject to the cumbersome formalities mentioned in the text.

and without making the participant a shareholder. A VSOP, in turn, serves as the contractual substitute for stock option plans: instead of granting a right to acquire shares, it gives the participant the right to receive a cash amount, usually at a liquidation event, reflecting the increase in the company's equity value above a predefined threshold.

PSPs and VSOPs can be administratively simpler than issuing real equity in Germany or Italy, but they are procedurally less effective than U.S. RSU and stock option plans. They suffer from two limitations: they are not hard-wired into the VC-backed firm's capital structure and are sensitive to the structure of exit transactions. In the U.S., RSUs and stock options are embedded immediately in standard corporate law institutions. By contrast, the economic effect of PSPs and VSOPs relies entirely on contractual arrangements which must include detailed provisions specifying how synthetic equity mirrors share classes, liquidation preferences, conversion mechanics, dilution, and the allocation of exit proceeds. These provisions are rarely self-executing: when a financing round or a liquidity event occurs, they often require bespoke contractual adaptation to map synthetic awards onto the actual transaction structure, thereby creating a greater risk of uncertainty and implementation frictions than U.S.-style equity-settled RSU or option plans.³⁹⁶

In addition, because PSPs and VSOPs operate as contractual rights to receive a sum of money rather than equity positions, they do not automatically "follow" the equity in future exit or restructuring transactions. In U.S. VC deals, RSUs and stock options typically move together with the underlying equity: they are converted, rolled over, or cashed out automatically as part of the overall deal structure. That is not the case with PSPs and VSOPs: they require contractual adaptation whenever transactions affecting equity occur. Share deals, asset deals, partial rollovers, management reinvestments, or staged exits routinely raise questions about participation, assumption, cash-out, amendment, subordination and source of funds of synthetic awards.³⁹⁷

Hence, these synthetic equity arrangements reduce corporate law frictions at the grant stage only at the cost of creating uncertainty about the fate of the granted equity-like claims later on. They are, therefore, less functional than the corresponding U.S. arrangements.

2. Governance

U.S. VC-backed firms exhibit a peculiar governance model that ties the board's composition to the firm's performance, adapts shareholder and director duties to the peculiarities of the VC business model, and enables the VCF to exercise a significant influence, if not control, over the company. Other governance arrangements lock both the VCF and the entrepreneur in, give the VCFs to protect the size of its stake in the company, and empower them to severely punish the entrepreneur in case of misbehavior.

U.S. VC deals achieve this outcome via arrangements that grant VCFs director appointment and removal rights, corporate opportunity doctrine waivers, and protective

³⁹⁶ For example, following a Series B financing with a new preferred class, U.S. stock options automatically reference the post-financing common shares and inherit the updated conversion and liquidation mechanics. A PSP or VSOP, by contrast, must be contractually "re-mapped" to the new share class and preference stack, requiring clarification as to whether and possibly how the synthetic awards track the new preference and/or conversion ratios associated with the newly issued shares or are diluted by that issuance.

³⁹⁷ For example, in a U.S. share deal, outstanding RSUs and stock options automatically convert into the right to receive the same mix of cash and rollover equity offered to common shareholders. By contrast, in a German or Italian trade sale, a PSP or VSOP typically requires an express determination as to whether participants are cashed out at signing, rolled over into the buyer's structure, or left behind with a residual claim—which may often become a separate point of negotiation late in the process.

provisions, as well as share transfer restrictions, pre-emptive rights regarding future share issuances, and bad leaver provisions.

i. Directors' Appointment and Removal

Under U.S. VC contracts, convertible preferred shares carry special control rights until they are converted. Charter provisions assign to VC: (1) the right to appoint a given fraction (generally half) of the directors;³⁹⁸ (2) the right to appoint additional directors, and thus secure control of the board, if the firm performs poorly or in case of so-called “default events”—which include the VC-backed firm’s failure to comply with the obligation to buy back the VCF’s shares following its exercise of redemption rights.³⁹⁹ VCFs exercise these rights by voting as a separate class.⁴⁰⁰ U.S. VC contracts also include specific provisions in shareholder agreements that govern the voting process in the general shareholder meeting and assign the VCF the exclusive right to remove the directors it has appointed.⁴⁰¹ This tool is key to making sure that directors will take decisions friendly to “their” VCFs, particularly when default events materialize.⁴⁰² Appointment and removal rights are generally considered key in bridging information asymmetries and mitigating opportunism risk through board composition.⁴⁰³ In addition, they ensure that VCF-appointed directors advance the VCF’s interests and uphold the VC contract in a way that is consistent with its underlying economic rationale.⁴⁰⁴

Under German corporate law, VCFs can be granted the right to appoint and remove corporate directors. In the AG, the charter can grant individual shareholders the right to appoint (“delegate”) up to one-third of the members of the supervisory board and also remove or replace the appointed directors at will.⁴⁰⁵ The binding maximum number of supervisory board members individual shareholders can delegate precludes arrangements that would allow VCFs to appoint additional directors in a “default event” to have a majority of delegated directors dominate the board. The charter of a GmbH may allow individual shareholders to appoint and remove a given number, or even all, of the company directors⁴⁰⁶ and even grant them ad hoc appointment rights to take board control in the presence of “default events.” Yet, in removing directors, VCFs are subject to fiduciary obligations *qua* shareholders: more specifically, the duty of loyalty implies that VCFs must exercise their rights, including removal rights, in the company’s interest, taking other stakeholders’ interests into account.⁴⁰⁷ In addition,

³⁹⁸ MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 592–96.

³⁹⁹ *Id.* at 595. On the VCF’s redemption rights, see *infra* text accompanying note 634.

⁴⁰⁰ See again MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 592, 594 (discussing the mechanics of voting for election appointment and removal).

⁴⁰¹ *Id.* at 594–95.

⁴⁰² Cf. Simone M. Sepe, *Intruders in the Boardroom: The Case of Constituency Directors*, 91 WASH. U. L. REV. 309, 329–330 (2013) (emphasizing that constituency directors are key to advancing their sponsors’ interest in the critical scenarios that emerge throughout VC-backed firms’ lifecycle).

⁴⁰³ See Fried & Ganor, *supra* note 66, at 989–90.

⁴⁰⁴ See, e.g., Robert P. Bartlett, III, *Shareholder Wealth Maximization as Means to an End*, 38 SEATTLE U. L. REV. 255, 262–69 (2015) (explaining that VC-backed firms’ boards serve as the venue for dynamic bargaining between VCFs’ and entrepreneurs’ representatives and implementing the corporate contract).

⁴⁰⁵ §§ 101 para. 2, 4, 103 para 2 *AktG* (Ger.). These are mandatory provisions. See *supra* note 94 (explaining the rigidity of the regime for AGs).

⁴⁰⁶ BGH, Oct. 5, 1973, 27 WERTPAPIERMITTEILUNGEN 1295, 1296 (Ger.) (confirming that the charter can substitute appointment rights of individual shareholders for the shareholder meeting’s competence under the default rule in § 46, No. 5 *GmbHG* (Ger.)). No such arrangements are permissible, though, if the GmbH is subject to co-determination. For details, see *supra* note 77.

⁴⁰⁷ Case law acknowledges that shareholders in the AG and the GmbH have fiduciary duties similar to those of directors. See, e.g., BGH, Jun. 5, 1975, 64 BGHZ 325, 329 and BGH, Oct. 8, 2007, 61 NJW 517, 519 (2008). German corporate law codifies directors’ duties in §§ 93 para 1, sentence 1, and 116, sentence 1, *AktG*

shareholders' fiduciary duties have a horizontal dimension, requiring shareholders to adequately consider other shareholders' company-related interests.⁴⁰⁸ Private ordering, including shareholder voting agreements, cannot depart from this mandatory regime,⁴⁰⁹ which invites entrepreneurs to litigate any alleged "selfish" VCFs' decision to remove directors who do not act in VCFs' interest.

Italian corporate law takes a broadly similar approach. In SPAs, it allows arrangements that grant VCFs the right to appoint (up to half of the) directors of a SPA in a separate meeting,⁴¹⁰ but rules out the arrangements granting VCFs the right to appoint additional directors under specific circumstances. Under blackletter corporate law, if a company issues shares with limited voting rights, such shares cannot exceed half of the company's overall outstanding capital.⁴¹¹ Scholars infer from this provision that shareholders holding half of the company's outstanding capital *must* have the power to appoint the majority of directors.⁴¹² Notaries' views on this issue diverge, though.⁴¹³ Arrangements that grant a specific class of shares the right to appoint the majority of directors are therefore of uncertain validity.

Nor does Italian corporate law allow contracting parties to govern the removal of directors through shareholder agreements. As noted, Italian corporate law prevents a VCF from appointing a majority of directors. Scholars generally consider directors' removal rights as a necessary *pendant* to directors' appointment rights: they go hand in hand.⁴¹⁴ Thus, like directors' appointment rights, directors' removal rights fall within the remit of the shareholder

(respectively, for the members of the AGs' executive and supervisory boards), and in § 43, para 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.). These duties prescribe that directorial decision-making ought to advance the interest of the firm, which includes the interests of other stakeholders. See, e.g., Andreas Cahn, § 76, in 7 *KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG*, para. 25 (Ulrich Noack & Dirk Zetzsche eds., 4th ed. 2023); and *Id.*, § 93, in *Id.*, para. 112–113; Holger Fleischer, § 43, in 2 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG*, para. 13 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2023).

⁴⁰⁸ See BGH, Feb. 1, 1988, 103 BGHZ 184, 195 and BGH, June 5, 1975, 65 BGHZ 15, 18–9 (making this point for the AG and the GmbH, respectively).

⁴⁰⁹ For a discussion, see Alexander Hellgardt, *Abdingbarkeit der gesellschaftsrechtlichen Treuepflicht*, in *FESTSCHRIFT FÜR KLAUS HOPT*, *supra* note 276, at 765, 776–78.

⁴¹⁰ The general shareholder meeting has the exclusive competence to appoint directors. See artt. 2364, comma 1, No. 2, 2383, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.). Yet, the firm's charter may stipulate "special rules" for the appointment of directors. See art. 2368, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.). Drawing from these provisions, many scholars argue that arrangements enabling different classes of shareholders to vote in separate meetings are viable. For details and references, see Pierpaolo M. Sanfilippo, *Gli amministratori*, in *DIRITTO*, *supra* note 151, at 461.

⁴¹¹ See art. 2351, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.).

⁴¹² See, e.g., Niccolò Abriani, *Art. 2351*, in *IL NUOVO DIRITTO DELLE SOCIETÀ* 310, 325 (Gastone Cottino et al. eds., 2004); and, also for further references, Sanfilippo, *supra* note 410, at 467 (arguing that private ordering cannot achieve the result of assigning the right to appoint a majority of the directors to a minority of shareholders).

⁴¹³ Compare Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 142 of 19 May 2015 "Categorie di azioni e diritto di nomina di amministratori e sindaci"*, <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/142/> (concluding for the validity of charter provisions that grant one or more shareholders the right to appoint a majority or even the totality of directors irrespective of the number of shares they hold) with Consiglio notarile dei distretti di Firenze, Pistoia e Prato, *Orientamento No. 15/2010 in tema di "Categorie di azioni e nomina degli amministratori"*, <https://www.consiglionotarilefirenze.it/index.php/orientamenti/societa-di-capitali/azioni-e-quote/79-categorie-di-azioni-e-nomina-degli-amministratori-15-2010.html> (concluding the opposite).

⁴¹⁴ See, e.g., Sanfilippo, *supra* note 413, at 479.

meeting,⁴¹⁵ leaving no scope for private ordering to deviate from that regime—whether through charter provisions or shareholder agreements.⁴¹⁶

Italian corporate law takes a different approach to directors' appointment and removal rights for SRLs, but the outcome is much the same as for SPAs. Shareholders of an SRL enjoy a significant latitude in defining the firm's internal structure,⁴¹⁷ particularly in designating the management body and appointing and removing directors.⁴¹⁸ Blackletter corporate law also permits shareholder rights *ad personam*, including rights relating to "the management of the company."⁴¹⁹ In interpreting blackletter corporate law, most scholars conclude that the firm's charter can include arrangements granting a shareholder the right to appoint some of the directors.⁴²⁰ In SME SRLs,⁴²¹ the same result can be achieved by incorporating that right in a special class of shares.⁴²² However, according to many scholars, private ordering is limited by another general principle of corporate law, namely that there must be a correlation between the "size" of an equity investment and the number and significance of the rights that come along with it.⁴²³ This principle implies that a minority shareholder cannot appoint a majority of directors.⁴²⁴ Other scholars dispute the existence of such a principle and recognize the validity of private ordering solutions that grant one shareholder the right to appoint a majority of directors.⁴²⁵ Most recent scholarship argues that, whatever the fate of those arrangements in SRLs, they would still likely be viable in SME SRLs.⁴²⁶ Although practitioners share the latter

⁴¹⁵ Under explicit blackletter corporate law, the shareholder meeting can remove a director with or without cause. See art. 2383, comma 3, *codice civile* (It.). This provision is interpreted as granting the shareholder meeting an unfettered right to remove directors at its discretion. See, e.g., Sanfilippo, *supra* note 410, at 480. Hence, the shareholder meeting is regarded as the repository of an exclusive right to remove directors. Accordingly, any arrangement that directly or indirectly limits the general meeting's power to remove directors, for instance by requiring a special majority or vesting other corporate actors with removal rights, is null and void. *Id.* Scholars consider this a foundational principle of corporate law because it defines a key aspect of the allocation of powers within the corporate firm. Thus, like other core components of Italian mandatory corporate law, private ordering may not deviate from it. See generally, *supra* note 87.

⁴¹⁶ See artt. 2368 and 2383, comma 3, c.c. (allowing the *charter* to set special rules for appointments to corporate office and making directors removable by the shareholders' meeting at any time, respectively). They jointly indicate that the removal power cannot be modified through private ordering. *cf.* ZANONI, *supra* note 14, at 162, 168.

⁴¹⁷ See Marco Cian, *La S.r.l.: la struttura organizzativa*, in DIRITTO, *supra* note 151, 696.

⁴¹⁸ *Id.*

⁴¹⁹ See art. 2468, comma 3, *codice civile* (It.). On rights *ad personam* in SRLs, see generally *supra* note 137 and accompanying text.

⁴²⁰ See, e.g., Daccò, *supra* note 255, at 672.

⁴²¹ See *supra* note 73 and 149.

⁴²² *Cf.* Consiglio, *Massima No. 171*, *supra* note 150 (shares may incorporate any of the rights *ad personam* that, under the general regime for SRL, the charter can assign to specific shareholders: see *supra* note 149).

⁴²³ See, e.g., Eugenio Barcellona, RISCHIO E POTERE NEL DIRITTO SOCIETARIO RIFORMATO FRA *GOLDEN QUOTA* DI S.R.L. E STRUMENTI FINANZIARI DI S.P.A. 12–13 (2012). This principle stems from the conviction that only shareholders who have made adequate investments have appropriate incentives to run the firm "responsibly." *Id.* Other scholars have similarly concluded that these arrangements might not fly. See Giovanni Capo, *Il governo dell'impresa nella nuova era della società a responsabilità limitata*, in 26 GIURISPRUDENZA COMMERCIALE I 501 506 (2003); Luigi Abete, I diritti particolari attribuibili ai soci di s.r.l.: alcuni profili, in 5 SOCIETÀ 295, 295–96.

⁴²⁴ See, e.g., Eugenio Barcellona, «Control enhancing mechanisms» e «governance» della società a responsabilità limitata: quali limiti all'autonomia privata?, 7 RIVISTA ORIZZONTI DEL DIRITTO COMMERCIALE 61, 71–76 (2019).

⁴²⁵ See, e.g., Mario Notari, *Diritti "particolari" dei soci e categorie "speciali" di partecipazioni*, 3 ANALISI GIURIDICA DELL'ECONOMIA 325, 331 (2003).

⁴²⁶ Peter Agstner et al., *supra* note 12, at 391–396 (discussing the statutory provisions serving as legal foundations of the principle, acknowledging that scholars regard it as a central in the interpretation of the regime governing Srl, but challenging its defensibility based on the most recent changes of that regime (on which see generally *supra* note 73).

view,⁴²⁷ it is at least uncertain whether Italian courts would sanction these arrangements as valid.

While Italian corporate law does allow, in different ways and to various extents, for the adoption of some of the elements of the contractual technology governing director appointment and removal in SPAs and SRLs, it also regularly determines a non-negligible compression of directors' ability to advance the agenda of their sponsors. In fact, all directors, including those appointed by a shareholder, are always bound by the duty of loyalty.⁴²⁸ They thus have to advance the interest of the firm as a whole and cannot further the interest of a specific shareholder.⁴²⁹ This duty cannot be opted out of and implies, *inter alia*, that directors cannot make decisions that would harm the firm, irrespective of the expectations and instructions of the shareholders appointing them.⁴³⁰ These restrictions on appointed directors' powers increase litigation risk and thus decrease the arrangement's functionality relative to its U.S. counterpart.

VCFs and entrepreneurs seek to bypass constraints under German and Italian corporate laws, particularly those stemming from the directors' duty of loyalty, through alternative arrangements granting VCFs the right to appoint so-called board observers. Indeed, board observers have always been rather common in U.S. VC deals too.⁴³¹ Although they attend board meetings, provide valuable insights, and contribute to discussions with a view to reporting back to their sponsors, board observers have no voting rights and, therefore, cannot steer the firm in any direction.⁴³² Board observers are therefore an imperfect substitute for VCF-appointed directors.

To sum up, German and Italian corporate laws prevent VCFs and entrepreneurs from adopting directors' appointment and removal rights *à la Delaware*. While arrangements relating to board representation are valid to some extent, arrangements allowing VCFs to secure board control in default events and steer the firm's decision-making in a self-serving direction are ruled out. Alternative arrangements may address information asymmetries through board observers but fail as tools to ensure that the board makes choices favorable to the VCF.

ii. Protective Provisions

In U.S. VC contracts, protective (charter) provisions (also known as “negative covenants”) stipulate that the VCF has a veto right on specific actions, as long as a majority of

⁴²⁷ See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 39 of 19 Nov. 2004 “Diritti particolari dei soci nella s.r.l.”*, <https://www.consigionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/39/>. Note, however, that the same document stresses that private ordering solutions should be deemed viable only within the boundaries set by the “general limits of the legal system.” *Id.* The specific meaning of such “general principles” in terms of their contents and practical consequences, is hardly discernible *ex ante*, though. This implies an additional layer of legal uncertainty.

⁴²⁸ For details, see Domenico Mosco & Salvatore Lopreiato, *Doveri e responsabilità di amministratori e sindaci nelle società di capitali*, 63 RIVISTA DELLE SOCIETÀ 117, 117–21 (2019) (discussing in depth the positive foundations of fiduciary duties and their prescriptive contents under Italian law).

⁴²⁹ In the case law, see Cass., 24 Aug. 2004, No. 16707 (It.) (stressing the crucial role of the company's interest in guiding directors' decision-making and assessing their actions). In the literature, see, e.g., Mosco & Lopreiato, *supra* note 428, at 120 (explaining that corporate directors have the duty to advance the interest of the firm and to ignore the incentives stemming from any “other interest”).

⁴³⁰ Cf. Cian, *supra* note 417, at 699–700 (explaining that the firm's charter can grant shareholders the right to instruct the directors as to the course of action they should take, but that directors must refuse to implement shareholders' instructions if their implementation has “the potential to harm the company and expose directors to liability”).

⁴³¹ See FELD & MENDELSON, *supra* note 101, at 68–69.

⁴³² For details, Nizan Geslevich Packin & Anat Alon-Beck, *Board Observers*, 2025 ILL. L. REV. 1507 1517 and 1529 (2025).

the convertible preferred shares are outstanding.⁴³³ The actions that require the VCF's approval typically are those that (i) can impair its convertible preferred shares' attributes, (ii) result in distributions to shareholders, including through dividends, (iii) can result in the sale of the company, regardless of the transaction's form, or its winding up, and (iv) typically fall within the scope of the traditional covenants that a lender imposes on a borrower.⁴³⁴ These provisions enable the VCF to protect their investment irrespective of the size of their equity stake.⁴³⁵

Some scholars contend that U.S.-style protective provisions are unnecessary in German and Italian VC deals because default corporate law already mandates shareholder approval for some of the transactions falling within their scope.⁴³⁶ However, the set of transactions requiring shareholder approval is more limited than that covered by standard protective provisions in U.S. VC deals.⁴³⁷ Therefore, U.S.-style protective provisions would hold significant value also in German and Italian VC deals. Yet, both German and Italian corporate laws make their transplant a complicated exercise.

The corporate law regime for German AGs lays down board and shareholder competences through mandatory provisions.⁴³⁸ Granting shareholders veto rights on matters falling within the management or supervisory board's remit is therefore unlawful. Moreover, although statutory law allows for the creation of a special class of shares vested with the right to approve certain transactions in a separate resolution,⁴³⁹ such a right can only be established for shareholder competences stipulated in the Stock Corporation Act.⁴⁴⁰ They cannot increase the space for U.S.-style protective provisions by shifting board competences to shareholders. Even within these strict limits, the exact boundaries of the enabling provision remain unclear,⁴⁴¹ raising further doubts about the extent to which protective provisions *à la Delaware* would be valid in the AG. Finally, German corporate law permits general voting caps for non-listed firms but prohibits them if they apply only to certain shareholders.⁴⁴² Veto rights can be understood as content-specific voting caps for the entrepreneur. Hence, one can conceptualize them as functional substitutes for such caps, implying that they would fall within the scope of the relevant prohibition and generally be null and void.⁴⁴³

Even under the more permissive corporate law regime for GmbHs, protective provisions may not unleash their full potential. Contracting parties may shape the competencies of a

⁴³³ See generally, MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 596.

⁴³⁴ *Id.* at 597–98, 599, 599–600, 600–603 (discussing the various types of protective provisions).

⁴³⁵ PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 145.

⁴³⁶ See, e.g., KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 564 (arguing that some of the transactions that in U.S. VC deals require shareholder approval because of protective provisions are already subject to shareholder approval under default German corporate law), and ZANONI, *supra* note 14, at 174 (making a similar point, albeit only for SPAs).

⁴³⁷ PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 145 (noting that the protective provisions cover a broader set of transactions than those with regard to which the VCF may already enjoy special protection under the default corporate law regime, “for example[,] under German law.”). Compared to standard U.S. protective provisions, the Italian corporate law regimes are similarly underinclusive. *Cf.* ZANONI, *supra* note 14, at 174, 181 (hinting at the under-inclusiveness of the regime governing SPAs and discussing solutions that may overcome or at least mitigate it).

⁴³⁸ See §§ 76 para. 1, 111, 112, and 119 *AktG* (Ger.) (defining the competences of the management and supervisory board).

⁴³⁹ See § 138 *AktG* (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Jochen Vetter, § 138, in KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, para. 71 (Ulrich Noack & Wolfgang Zöllner eds., 3d ed. 2019) (contracting parties use separate resolution rights for certain share classes to implement veto rights).

⁴⁴⁰ Jens Koch, § 138, in AKTIENGESETZ, *supra* note 117, at para. 2.

⁴⁴¹ The literature has debated extensively whether and to what extent the firm's charter can include special resolution requirements. For a discussion, see, e.g., Vetter, *supra* note 439, at para. 71–75 (explaining that the preconditions and criteria under which the firm's charter can establish special resolution requirements are not clearly defined).

⁴⁴² See § 134 paras. 1, 5 *AktG* (Ger.).

⁴⁴³ KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 621.

GmbH's internal bodies as they see fit⁴⁴⁴ and shareholders can give instructions to the firm's management.⁴⁴⁵ Therefore, private ordering solutions granting VCFs veto rights would appear to be viable in principle. Yet, shareholder veto rights may not be designed in such a way as to interfere with managerial decisions aimed to: (a) prevent payouts to shareholders in violation of capital maintenance rules, (b) ensure proper book-keeping, and (c) avoid making payments that would reduce corporate assets once the company is close to insolvency.⁴⁴⁶ For VCFs in poorly performing firms, this mandatory reserve of managerial power may prove problematic because it also prevents the establishment of veto rights over certain critical transactions, such as bankruptcy filings.⁴⁴⁷ Even more importantly, shareholder actions are subject to the duty of loyalty also in the GmbH,⁴⁴⁸ which prevents veto rights from becoming tools that the VCF could use to advance their sole interest.⁴⁴⁹

Protective provisions are similarly problematic in SPAs and SRLs. Contracting parties may be reluctant to implement the entire set of protective provisions and/or to freely exercise the ensuing rights to avoid the risk of liability under the regime governing corporate groups.⁴⁵⁰ Under Italian group law, any entity that, in directing the operations of a controlled corporation, acts in its own interest and thereby induces the management of such controlled company to take actions that are contrary to what is vaguely termed "principles of correct corporate management" is liable towards shareholders and creditors of the subsidiary for any resulting damage.⁴⁵¹ Case law, supported by some scholars, has concluded that this regime may also apply to investment funds with respect to their portfolio firms.⁴⁵² As a result, if VCFs are granted significant veto rights over a portfolio company and, as VC firms often do, take an active role in its management, they risk being qualified as directing the corporation's operations. On these grounds, they can be held liable for the damage caused at the subsidiary by unlawfully instructing it to act or refrain from acting in a specific manner. The prospect of such liability has reportedly given rise to significant concerns among VC firms.⁴⁵³

VCFs and entrepreneurs can hardly replicate the outcomes achievable under U.S. VC contracts through alternative arrangements. For sure, shareholder agreements cannot do the

⁴⁴⁴ See § 45 para. 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Ulrich Noack, § 46, in *GMBHG*, paras. 5–6 (Ulrich Noack et al. eds., 23rd ed. 2022).

⁴⁴⁵ See § 37 para. 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Michael Beurskens, § 37, in *GMBHG*, *supra* note 444, at para. 30.

⁴⁴⁶ Cf. §§ 30, 41, and 64 *GmbHG* (Ger.).

⁴⁴⁷ See Klaus-Dieter Stepan & Johannes Tieves, § 37 in 2 *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG*, para. 137 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

⁴⁴⁸ BGH, Nov. 19, 1990, 44 NJW 848 (1991).

⁴⁴⁹ Fiduciary obligations also apply if veto rights are established in shareholder agreements. See Johannes Wertenbruch, *Beschlussfassung und Pflichtverletzung im Stimmrechtskonsortium*, 12 *NEUE ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT* 645, 648 (2009).

⁴⁵⁰ See artt. 2497–2497-septies, *codice civile* (It.).

⁴⁵¹ Artt. 2497, *codice civile* (It.).

⁴⁵² See Trib. Milano, 4 May 2017, and Trib. Milano, 9 Jan. 2018 (It.) (both concluding that the regime described in the text applies to fund managers in their relationships with portfolio companies). In the literature, see, e.g., Giuseppe Ferri jr., *Soggettività giuridica e autonomia patrimoniale nei fondi comuni di investimento*, 19 *RIVISTA ORIZZONTI DEL DIRITTO COMMERCIALE* 3 (2015); Fabio Nieddu Arrica, *Partecipazioni di controllo, gestione «attiva» delle portfolio companies e attività di direzione e coordinamento*, 20 *ANALISI GIURIDICA DELL'ECONOMIA* 287 (2021).

⁴⁵³ See Andrea di Castri, *Quanto la disciplina della responsabilità da direzione rischia di travolgere le SGR?*, *Il Quotidiano Giuridico – online*, Dec. 2, 2020, <https://www.altalex.com/documents/2020/12/02/quanto-la-disciplina-della-responsabilita-da-direzione-rischia-di-travolgere-le-sgr> (reporting that the relevant case law generated concerns amongst local private equity and VC investors and that the increased risk of liability may deter investments).

trick. In Germany, they cannot expand the remit of shareholder competences.⁴⁵⁴ Besides, shareholder agreements could not guarantee unconditional veto rights for the VCF to pursue their own interests because the exercise of voting rights would remain subject to the fiduciary duty of loyalty, requiring voting behavior to be in line with the company's interest.⁴⁵⁵ Moreover, even if these shareholder agreements were viable, they would not be self-enforcing.⁴⁵⁶ In Italy, shareholder agreements cannot reduce the liability risk arising from the position of de jure or de facto control and the exercise of the related influence that protective provisions entail and enable.

To conclude, German and Italian corporate laws do not make it easy to replicate protective provisions in VC deals. If available at all, the protective provisions featured in German and Italian VC deals may fail to extend as broadly as the corresponding arrangements of U.S. VC deals. Even when protective provisions have a broad scope, the exercise of the resulting veto rights is, unlike in the U.S., subject to some scrutiny through standards of various types, leading to litigation risk and/or exposing VCFs to liability. One way to secure the same level of protection would be to hold a majority equity stake in the portfolio company. Empirical evidence suggests that this is what VCFs operating locally do.⁴⁵⁷ However, this alternative obviously comes with the drawback of lower portfolio diversification and higher risk for VCFs,⁴⁵⁸ which implies a higher cost of capital for entrepreneurs.

iii. Corporate Opportunity Doctrine Waivers

Under U.S. VC contracts, VC-backed firms' charters include broad corporate opportunity waivers. With such waivers, the corporation relinquishes its interest in all or some potential business opportunities and allows the VCF *qua* controlling shareholder and the directors it has appointed to exploit business opportunities with no need for board or shareholder approval and no litigation risk.⁴⁵⁹ By reallocating ex ante property rights in future business opportunities, these private ordering solutions facilitate their efficient exploitation, as well as help VCFs save on transaction costs.⁴⁶⁰ Empirical evidence shows that private ordering in this context has been key to stimulating VC investments in the U.S. without increasing managerial malfeasance.⁴⁶¹

While German corporate law is partly hospitable towards these solutions, Italian corporate law rejects them altogether.

⁴⁵⁴ See, e.g., Andreas Pentz, § 23 in 1 MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTIENGESETZ, para. 195 (Wulf Goette & Mathias Habersack eds., 6th ed. 2024) (explaining that only shareholder affairs can be regulated in shareholder agreements).

⁴⁵⁵ BGH, Nov. 24, 2008, 179 BGHZ 13 para. 15 (explaining that the duty of loyalty constraints voting predetermined in shareholder agreements). Most commentators agree. See, e.g., Koch, *supra* note 117, at para. 45.

⁴⁵⁶ See *supra* note 40 and accompanying text. See also *supra* text accompanying notes 407-409.

⁴⁵⁷ See Guler & Guillén, *supra* note 10, at 190, 196 (hypothesizing that VCFs active in countries with more rigid legal regimes secure a majority stake in portfolio firms to obviate the impossibility of writing U.S.-style state-contingent agreements).

⁴⁵⁸ See *supra* note 25 and *infra* note 493.

⁴⁵⁹ DGCL § 122(17). The case law has clarified that corporate opportunity waivers can be broad but not generically refer to "all" the business opportunities that a firm may potentially have an interest in. See *Alarm.com Holdings, Inc. v. ABS Capital Partners Inc.*, No. 360, 2018 (Del. Feb. 7, 2019).

⁴⁶⁰ See Gabriel Rauterberg & Eric L. Talley, *Contracting Out of the Fiduciary Duty of Loyalty: An Empirical Analysis of Corporate Opportunity Waivers*, 117 COLUM. L. REV. 1075, 1104-13 (2017) (explaining how private ordering can contribute to the efficient allocation of business opportunities).

⁴⁶¹ Ofer Eldar et al., *Common Venture Capital Investors and Startup Growth*, 37 REV. FIN. STUD. 549 (2023).

Both German and Italian corporate laws include corporate opportunity doctrines as codified or uncoded specifications of the duty of loyalty⁴⁶²—which, as discussed, cannot generally be opted out.⁴⁶³

Under German corporate law, shareholders and members of the management board, and, where applicable, the supervisory board need the authorization from the corporation's competent bodies if they intend to exploit corporate opportunities.⁴⁶⁴ Although German corporate law rules out a general waiver of the underlying fiduciary duty in both AGs and GmbHs,⁴⁶⁵ it allows contracting parties to specify the duty of loyalty in the charter of GmbHs. That includes waiving the corporate opportunity doctrine not only for specified business opportunities but also for classes of such opportunities.⁴⁶⁶

Directors and controlling shareholders of Italian companies must obtain an authorization if they want to exploit a corporate opportunity,⁴⁶⁷ but less room is left to private ordering than in Germany. Legal scholars see the corporate opportunity doctrine as key to preserving the corporation's ability to appropriate potential future business opportunities that may contribute to expanding its assets,⁴⁶⁸ and thus to protecting not only its shareholders' but also its creditors' interests.⁴⁶⁹ This regime, which is held to apply irrespective of the firm's organizational form,⁴⁷⁰ is regarded as mandatory.⁴⁷¹ Therefore, explicit waivers of the corporate opportunity regime *à la Delaware* are not an option in Italy.

To the best of our knowledge, VCFs and entrepreneurs in German AGs and in Italian companies have not sought to elaborate alternative arrangements that, where required, may make up for the unavailability of the U.S.-style solutions we have described.

To conclude, under German law VCFs and entrepreneurs may opt out of the duty of loyalty as regards corporate opportunities, so long as they choose the GmbH, while in Italy parties may not do so. To be fair, the risk of fiduciary duties litigation in Italy is much lower

⁴⁶² German legal scholars have elaborated an uncoded business opportunity doctrine that courts have then applied. For details, see generally Hellgardt, *supra* note 409; Klaus J. Hopt & Markus Roth, *Die Treuepflicht des Vorstands der Aktiengesellschaft in 1 GEDÄCHTNISCHRIFT FÜR LEONIDAS GEORGAKOPOULOS*, 293 (Dimitris Tzouganatos ed., 2016). Under Italian corporate law, the doctrine stems from blackletter corporate law. See art. 2391, comma 6, *codice civile* (It.).

⁴⁶³ See, respectively, *supra* text accompanying note 407 for Germany, and *supra* text accompanying note 96 for Italy.

⁴⁶⁴ For details and references, see *supra* notes 407 and 409 and accompanying text. The duty of loyalty is tied to the corporation's purpose. See *supra* note 83. Thus, it is binding not only for (controlling) shareholders but also for executive and supervisory board members in both the AG and the GmbH. See also §§ 93, 116 *AktG* and § 52 para 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.).

⁴⁶⁵ See Gregor Bachmann et al., *RECHTSREGELN FÜR DIE GESCHLOSSENE KAPITALGESELLSCHAFT*, 103 (2012).

⁴⁶⁶ See, e.g., Holger Fleischer & Lars Harzmeier, *Zur Abdingbarkeit der Treuepflichten bei Personengesellschaften und GmbH*, 18 *NEUE ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT* 1289, 1296 (2015); and Kumpan, *supra* note 465, at 505–06.

⁴⁶⁷ See, e.g., Francesco Barachini, *L'appropriazione delle corporate opportunities come fattispecie di infedeltà degli amministratori di S.p.a.*, in 2 *IL NUOVO DIRITTO DELLE SOCIETÀ – LIBER AMICORUM* GIAN FRANCO CAMPOBASSO (Pietro Abbadesse & Giuseppe B. Portale eds., 2006), 603, 625–29 and 653.

⁴⁶⁸ *Id.* at 620.

⁴⁶⁹ *Id.* The reason why Italian scholars connect the business opportunity to creditor protection is that creditors have the right to sue directors if they fail to comply with their duties as regards the preservation of the firm's assets. See artt. 2394, 2476, comma 6, *codice civile* (It.), respectively for SPAs and SRLs.

⁴⁷⁰ Italian corporate law scholars agree that this regime, formally laid down for SPAs, applies to SRLs as well. See, e.g., GIUSEPPE ZANARONE, *DELLA SOCIETÀ A RESPONSABILITÀ LIMITATA* 960 (2010).

⁴⁷¹ Italian scholars generally consider the duty of loyalty and the regime governing conflicts of interest mandatory. See *supra* note 96.

than in the U.S.,⁴⁷² which makes restrictions on private ordering less consequential than they would otherwise be.

iv. Share Transfer Restrictions

U.S. VC-backed firms' charters stipulate that the VCF and/or the entrepreneur cannot transfer their shares until specific events (e.g., a trade sale) materialize as opposed to lock-ins for a given timespan (e.g., five years).⁴⁷³ Constraining VCFs' and entrepreneurs' ability to trade in their shares is crucial for both parties. On the one hand, the VCF may want to lock the entrepreneur in because innovative firms' success largely depends on entrepreneurs' firm-specific human capital investment, particularly during their early stage.⁴⁷⁴ On the other, the entrepreneur may want to lock the VCF in because its expertise and sustained engagement may be crucial for the success of the venture.⁴⁷⁵

Under German and Italian corporate laws, such bans on share transfers are problematic. Contracting parties can, in principle, agree on limitations on share transfers. However, commitments not to divest are subject to various limitations.

In principle, German corporate law allows parties to restrict the transfer of AGs' shares through arrangements in the firm's charter.⁴⁷⁶ However, the relevant arrangements cannot be drafted as purely state-contingent restrictions. Instead, they need to make a share transfer contingent on the discretionary decision of the executive board or another corporate body.⁴⁷⁷ These procedural requirements also prohibit arrangements that seek to mimic state-contingent restrictions and stipulate that the relevant corporate body must withhold its consent in predetermined cases (e.g., a share transfer, independent of a liquidity event), which the majority of scholars see as *de facto* bans on share transfers, therefore considering them void.⁴⁷⁸ Thus, bans on share transfers *à la* Delaware are simply unviable in AGs.

On the contrary, the charter of GmbHs may ban share transfers.⁴⁷⁹ However, mandatory law protects shareholders from the "risk of imprisonment" granting them an "extraordinary

⁴⁷² See, e.g., Pierre-Henri Conac, Luca Enriques, & Martin Gelter, *Constraining Dominant Shareholders' Self-dealing: The Legal Framework in France, Germany, and Italy*, 4 EUR. COMP. & FIN. L. REV. 491, at 507–23 (2007) (discussing the regime against self-dealing in Italy, and pointing out the weaknesses in the enforcement apparatus).

⁴⁷³ See FELD & MENDELSON, *supra* note 101, at 93 (pointing out that the standard solution to enable VCFs to have full control over the shareholder basis has historically been radical bans on share transfers, implying that entrepreneurs could not dispose of their shares "until the investors could sell their shares, through either an IPO or a sale of the company.").

⁴⁷⁴ Edward B. Rock & Michael L. Wachter, *Waiting for the Omelette to Set: Match-Specific Assets and Minority Oppression in Close Corporations*, 1999 J. CORP. L. 913, 918–21 (1999) (stressing the importance of human capital in early-stage firms).

⁴⁷⁵ See, e.g., PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 203–04 (stressing also that the entrepreneur's interest in constraining VCF's ability to sell its shares has become even more important as so-called "secondary funds" have emerged).

⁴⁷⁶ To be sure, German corporate law explicitly permits this option only for registered shares. See § 68 para. 2 sentence 1 *AktG* (Ger.). Legal scholars consider transactions that violate these share transfer restrictions as void. See, e.g., Andreas Cahn, § 68 in BECKONLINE GROßKOMMENTAR ZUM AKTIENRECHT, para. 31 (Eberhard Stolz & Rüdiger Veil eds., 2024).

⁴⁷⁷ See Markus Lutter & Tim Drygala, § 68 in KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTIENGESETZ, para. 66 (Wolfgang Zöllner & Ulrich Noack eds., 3d ed. 2011).

⁴⁷⁸ See, e.g., Walter Bayer, § 68 in MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTIENGESETZ, para. 62 (Wulf Goetthe & Mathias Habersack, 6th ed. 2024); for the minority position permitting such prohibitions, see Markus Lutter & Tim Drygala, § 68, in KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTIENGESETZ, para. 70 (Wolfgang Zöllner & Ulrich Noack eds., 3rd ed. 2011).

⁴⁷⁹ § 15 para. 5 *GmbHG* (Ger.). German corporate law stipulates that the firm's charter may make the transfer of shares contingent on "further conditions," allowing for a U.S.-style state-contingent design of the

right to leave the company,” regardless of the restrictions on share transfers in the company’s charter.⁴⁸⁰ Courts may find compelling reasons for an extraordinary exit from the company in situations where the arrangements seek to lock parties in.⁴⁸¹ Therefore, these arrangements suffer from significant limitations and cannot compare with their U.S. counterparts.

Italian corporate law takes a similar approach. In SPAs, such bans are only valid if they include a proviso stipulating a five-year limit.⁴⁸² In SRLs, the charter can include bans with an indefinite lifespan, but each shareholder shall then have the right to withdraw from the company at any time.⁴⁸³ The charter may postpone the exercise of this exit option for a maximum of two years after the ban’s adoption.⁴⁸⁴ The logic of this regime is to prevent the shareholder’s “imprisonment,”⁴⁸⁵ which comes at the cost of preventing parties from achieving the desired results.

Contracting parties have devised alternative arrangements in both jurisdictions. In Germany the arrangement of choice is an outright ban on share transfers in shareholder agreements, which most scholars deem viable.⁴⁸⁶ Placing the ban within a shareholder agreement, however, means the VCF would need to seek injunctive relief if the entrepreneur attempts to sell shares in violation of the prohibition.⁴⁸⁷ Thus, this alternative arrangement comes at the price of higher enforcement risk and is, therefore, functionally inferior to its U.S. counterpart.⁴⁸⁸ Including outright bans on the transfer of Italian SPAs’ shares into shareholder agreements would not help, because blackletter law stipulates that shareholder agreements are also subject to a five-year sunset clause.⁴⁸⁹ No such sunset clause exists for shareholder agreements regarding SRLs.⁴⁹⁰ Yet, for the reasons mentioned above,⁴⁹¹ limitations on share transfers included in shareholder agreements are functionally inferior to those included in the firm’s charter.⁴⁹²

Another alternative arrangement in German and Italian VC deals grants each contracting party a right of first refusal. Rights of first refusal, however, cannot prevent contracting parties from abandoning the VC-backed firm. To be sure, those arrangements do succeed in protecting

restrictions on share transfers. See § 15 para 5 *GmbHG* (Ger.). In the case law, see RGZ 80, 179 (Ger.), and Bayerisches Oberstes Landesgericht [Bavarian Court of Appeal] (BayObLG), DB 1989, 214, 215–16 (Ger.). In the literature, also for further references, see, e.g., Marc Löbbe, § 15, in 1 *GMBHG*, at para. 221 (Mathias Habersack et al. eds., 2021).

⁴⁸⁰ See BGH, Dec. 16, 1991, 116 BGHZ 359 (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Marc-Philippe Weller & Jochem Reichert, § 15, in *MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GESETZ BETREFFEND DIE GESELLSCHAFTEN MIT BESCHRÄNKTER HAFTUNG*, paras. 5–6 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

⁴⁸¹ The literature has sought to map the reasons that can justify such an exit. See, e.g., Jonas Bühler, *Der Austritt aus der GmbH*, 27 NZG 811 (2024) (showing that both the personal circumstances of shareholders and the state of the firm may legitimize divestment).

⁴⁸² See 2355, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.). For details, see, e.g., Lorenzo Stanghellini, *Articolo 2355-bis c.c. Limiti alla circolazione delle azioni*, in 2 *COMMENTARIO ALLA RIFORMA DELLE SOCIETÀ: AZIONI. ARTT. 2346–2362*, 559 (Mario Notari ed., 2008).

⁴⁸³ Art. 2469, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.). For details, see Danilo Galletti, *Art. 2469 c.c.*, in *CODICE COMMENTATO DELLE S.R.L.* 148, 148–149 (Paolo Benazzo & Sergio Patriarca eds., 2006).

⁴⁸⁴ See again art. 2469, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.). For details, see *id.*

⁴⁸⁵ *Id.*, at 149–51.

⁴⁸⁶ See, also for further references, e.g., Cahn, *supra* note 476, at para. 39.

⁴⁸⁷ *Id.* (highlighting this specific aspect).

⁴⁸⁸ On the effectiveness of relocating private ordering solutions that would be optimally included in the firm’s charter into shareholder agreements, see, also for references, *supra* text accompanying notes 39–41.

⁴⁸⁹ See *supra* note 87.

⁴⁹⁰ Under current case law a shareholder has the right to terminate a shareholder agreement with indefinite duration. See *supra* note 87. Contracting parties could sidestep this requirement by agreeing on a relatively long, but not indefinite and therefore not state-contingent, duration.

⁴⁹¹ See *supra* text preceding note 488.

⁴⁹² See *supra* text preceding note 39.

either contracting party's interest not to see any change in share ownership, but even that only at the cost of making additional investments. A scenario in which a cash-strapped entrepreneur may, in effect, buy out the VCF is implausible, while one in which the VCF buys out the entrepreneur is not ideal for the VCF, because it would have to commit additional funds without providing fresh capital to the firm. Moreover, the additional acquisition of shares may well be incompatible with the VCF's investment policy and strategies.⁴⁹³ Finally, the right of first refusal may also serve as a hold-up tool for the entrepreneur, who could threaten to leave to extract value from the VCF.

Overall, VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under German and Italian corporate laws cannot adopt the share transfer restrictions commonly found in U.S. VC deals. Rather, they must content themselves with inferior alternative arrangements.

v. Pre-emptive Rights

In U.S. VC deals, VC-backed firms' charters frequently include provisions granting them pre-emptive rights tailored to the specific needs of VCFs and entrepreneurs.⁴⁹⁴ These arrangements are key to protecting VCFs and entrepreneurs alike from dilution.⁴⁹⁵ Practitioners emphasize that customized pre-emptive rights arrangements have significantly helped high-growth companies secure VC financing, cautioning that regimes prohibiting such customization along dimensions valued by VCFs and entrepreneurs may place these companies at a competitive disadvantage when raising capital.⁴⁹⁶

German and Italian corporate laws provide shareholders with pre-emptive rights when a company issues new shares.⁴⁹⁷ This implies that VCFs and entrepreneurs do not have to negotiate over these protections. Yet, the law codifying pre-emptive rights is largely mandatory⁴⁹⁸ and, even where waivers are permissible, the relevant regimes impose significant strictures on private ordering.⁴⁹⁹ In fact, statutory pre-emptive rights in Germany and Italy alter the functioning of the alternative arrangements that supplant U.S.-style anti-dilution provisions.⁵⁰⁰ Therefore, the German and Italian regimes impose unjustified costs on contracting parties, because they grant VCFs protections that they would bargain for anyway but leave less room for tailoring them to the economic rationale of the VC deal.

vi. Bad Leaver Provisions

VCFs cannot fully assess the personal qualities of the entrepreneur before they invest.⁵⁰¹ After the investment, information asymmetries entail the risk that the entrepreneur may opportunistically take advantage of their controlling position within the VC-backed firm to

⁴⁹³ Portfolio diversification is a key objective in the investment policy of any VC firm. See *supra* note 25 and accompanying text. The agreement governing VCFs typically stipulates that VCFs will lay down the policy and strategies to achieve optimal portfolio diversification, including, *inter alia*, by defining the size of the investments in each portfolio company. See Paul A. Gompers & Josh Lerner, *The Use of Covenants: An Empirical Analysis of Venture Partnership Agreements*, 39 J. L. & ECON. 463, 480 (1996).

⁴⁹⁴ See, e.g., PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 185–90.

⁴⁹⁵ *Id.*, at 185.

⁴⁹⁶ *Id.*, at 185–86.

⁴⁹⁷ German corporate law explicitly provides pre-emptive rights for shareholders of AGs and extends the relevant provisions by analogy to GmbHs. See *supra* note 277. Italian corporate law stipulates the same protections as regards both SPAs and SRLs. See art. 2441, comma 1, 2481-bis, *codice civile* (It.).

⁴⁹⁸ See *supra* text accompanying notes 281 and 310.

⁴⁹⁹ See *supra* text accompanying note 289–294.

⁵⁰⁰ Cf. Ginevra, *supra* note 310, at 277–78 (emphasizing the costs that this regime imposes on contracting parties under Italian corporate law).

⁵⁰¹ See Gilson, *supra* note 5, at 1077.

advance their own agenda⁵⁰² or otherwise jeopardize the relationship with the VCF by engaging in grossly negligent or self-serving behavior.⁵⁰³ U.S. VC contracts mitigate this problem by including bad leaver provisions in the firm's charter.⁵⁰⁴ These provisions grant the VC-backed firm and/or the VCF the right to buy the entrepreneur's shares following misbehavior.⁵⁰⁵

Standard bad leaver provisions have two key features. First, they define a number of trigger events, including fraud, theft, gross misbehavior or exceeding limits of authority.⁵⁰⁶ Second, they impose a highly punitive purchase price,⁵⁰⁷ thus discouraging rent-seeking behavior and motivating entrepreneurs to provide optimal effort while refraining from opportunistic actions.⁵⁰⁸

German and Italian corporate laws erect insurmountable obstacles to U.S.-style bad leaver provisions. This is because both corporate law regimes in action view any transaction resulting in the forced buyout of a shareholder unfavorably.⁵⁰⁹

One transactional form in which under German law a buyout can be executed is a share redemption. While AGs' charters may include arrangements granting the company the right to redeem shares,⁵¹⁰ bad leaver provisions building upon such redemption rights are likely unenforceable for two reasons. First, building on blackletter law⁵¹¹ and with the support of scholars,⁵¹² courts argue that the AGs charters may not require shareholders to contribute anything beyond the capital that they have contractually committed to provide.⁵¹³ Hence scholars qualify arrangements that even have the mere potential of exacting ancillary contributions from shareholders, including managerial services, as null and void.⁵¹⁴ Drawing from this construct, scholars argue that the threat of redemption can serve to obtain additional contributions from a specific shareholder and thus consider the relevant arrangements null and void.⁵¹⁵ Bad leaver provisions that rely on redemption rights may therefore be declared null and void on these grounds, regardless of whether they grant the redemption right to the firm or

⁵⁰² Fried & Ganor, *supra* note 140, at 989.

⁵⁰³ Klausner & Litvak, *supra* note 5, at 56 (hinting at the risk that entrepreneurs *qua* managers might act carelessly or divert firm resources to themselves).

⁵⁰⁴ Luc Wynant et al., *How Private Equity-backed Buyout Contracts Shape Corporate Governance*, 25 VENTURE CAPITAL 135 (2023). To be sure, VC contracts also address this problem via board representation, which enables VCFs to monitor entrepreneurs. See Fried & Ganor, *supra* note 66, 989–90. Still, bad leaver provisions enable VCFs to punish entrepreneurs for misbehavior that the board may have failed to prevent and thus discourage entrepreneurs' misconduct *ex ante*.

⁵⁰⁵ See PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 181.

⁵⁰⁶ *Id.*

⁵⁰⁷ Wynant et al., *supra* note 504, at 147 (explaining the economic rationale for penalizing pricing in bad leaver provisions).

⁵⁰⁸ See Hellmann, *supra* note 5, at 58 (discussing the incentivizing function of arrangements setting a low buyout price).

⁵⁰⁹ We use the term “forced buyout” for the convenience of international readers, although we are aware that German (and, with some qualifications that are of no relevance here, Italy's) corporate law doctrine construes the relevant transactions as heteronomous expulsions, requiring, as a matter of law, compensation for the lost equity stake.

⁵¹⁰ See § 237 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.).

⁵¹¹ See § 54 para. 1 *AktG* (providing that “[t]he duty of the stockholders to make contributions is limited by the issue price of the shares of stock”). See also § 55 para. 1 *AktG* (Ger.) (allowing “incidental” shareholder obligations “in addition to making contributions to the capital stock” only under narrow circumstances that must be prespecified in the charter).

⁵¹² In the literature, see, e.g., BARBARA GRUNEWALD, *DER AUSSCHLUSS AUS GESELLSCHAFT UND VEREIN* 55 (1987).

⁵¹³ In the case law, see e.g., Oberlandesgericht Karlsruhe [Higher Regional Court of Karlsruhe] (OLG Karlsruhe), OLGR Karlsruhe 43, 309 (Ger.).

⁵¹⁴ See *supra* text accompanying notes 196–197.

⁵¹⁵ See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 725–29.

to the VCF. Second, case law requires charters to specify the trigger events for the exercise of redemption rights by the company,⁵¹⁶ unless the redemption is resolved upon *ad hoc* by a supermajority of shareholders.⁵¹⁷ Failure to comply with this specification requirement implies that the relevant arrangement is null and void,⁵¹⁸ invalidating clauses that, in an attempt to replicate U.S. provisions,⁵¹⁹ generically allow for redemptions in case of “misconduct” or “breach of fundamental obligations.”

GmbH charters may grant the firm—yet not the VCF—the right to buy out the entrepreneur through “expulsion provisions.”⁵²⁰ Such provisions are permissible, *inter alia*, to ensure the diligent execution of the entrepreneur’s management duties,⁵²¹ and are not subject to stringent pre-specification requirements.⁵²² Nonetheless, the exact perimeter for private ordering is hazy.⁵²³ Notably, courts and scholars generally recognize the legitimacy of share redemption provisions designed to remove disruptive shareholders whose presence endangers inter-shareholder relationships and, consequently, the firm’s continued viability.⁵²⁴ However, they also consider a forced buyout as a severe “sanction” that can only be applied as the “extreme solution.”⁵²⁵ A forced buyout must also be just and reasonable from the perspective of the shareholder whose equity interest is at stake. Therefore, the shareholder can demand a judicial review of the underlying resolution under a duty of loyalty standard.⁵²⁶ Whether the preconditions for a forced buyout are met in the typical circumstances in which bad leaver provisions are triggered in VC-backed firms ultimately depends on a case-by-case determination *ex post*. To be sure, courts—at least outside of the VC context—are willing to

⁵¹⁶ The firm’s charter must specify the reasons for the redemption in such a precise manner that the management decision is limited to formally ascertaining that the relevant facts have come into existence or the relevant requirements have been met. In other words, the management must have no leeway in deciding about the redemption. See, e.g., Oberlandesgericht München [Higher Regional Court of Munich] (OLG München), AG 2017, 441, 443 (Ger.). In the literature, see, e.g., Kai-Steffen Scholz, §63, in 4 MÜNCHENER HANDBUCH DES GESELLSCHAFTSRECHTS, para. 9 (Michael Hoffmann-Becking & Andreas Austmann eds., 5th ed. 2020).

⁵¹⁷ §§ 222 para. 1 sentence 1, 237 para. 2 sentences 1–2 *AktG* (Ger.). The predominant view amongst courts and scholars is that, under these provisions, the firm’s charter can include redemption clauses without pre-determined reasons. In the case law, see, e.g., Landgericht Stuttgart [Regional Court of Stuttgart] (LG Stuttgart), NZG 2021, 1227, para. 50 (Ger.). In the literature, see Jürgen Oechsler, § 237, in 4 MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, para. 42 (Wulf Goette & Mathias Habersack eds., 5th ed. 2021).

⁵¹⁸ See *supra* note 516.

⁵¹⁹ See *supra* text accompanying note 506.

⁵²⁰ On this so-called compulsory redemption, see § 34 para. 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.).

⁵²¹ See BGH, June 20, 1983, 36 NJW 2880, 2881 (Ger.). (concluding that, when a GmbH’s charter stipulates that a shareholder must provide management services to the company, failure to fulfill this obligation constitutes an “important reason” justifying the company’s exercise of its redemption right). Therefore, scholars argue that provisions in the firm’s charter granting the VC-backed firm the right to redeem the shares of the entrepreneur are valid if they stipulate that the redemption can occur in case the entrepreneur refuses to continue working as the company’s manager. See Winkler, *supra* note 195, at 192.

⁵²² Case law has concluded that a provision in the firm’s charter stipulating that shares may be redeemed for “important reasons” is in line with both requirements. See BGH, Feb. 13, 1995, 48 NJW 1358, 1359 (1995). The literature endorses this approach. See, e.g., Lutz Strohn, § 34, in MÜNCHENER KOMMENTAR ZUM GMBHG, para. 44 (Holger Fleischer & Wulf Goette eds., 4th ed. 2022).

⁵²³ Weitnauer, *supra* note 132, at para. 222 note 412 (conceding that the precise meaning of an “important reason” justifying the expulsion remains controversial amongst courts and scholars and it is at least questionable whether the stipulations in the shareholder agreement are relevant for the interpretation of codified law). For a comprehensive discussion of the partly inconsistent case law, see Detlef Kleindiek, § 34, in GMBHG, paras. 45–55 (Marcus Lutter & Peter Hommelhoff eds., 21st ed. 2023).

⁵²⁴ See BGH, Mar. 9, 1987, 78 GmBHR 302, 303 (Ger.). For a scholarly assessment, see Strohn, *supra* note 522, at para. 114 (explaining that the duty of loyalty serves as the analytical framework to account for the viability of such provisions).

⁵²⁵ See, e.g., BGH, Dec. 12, 2014, 18 NZG 429, para. 37 (Ger.). See also Strohn, *supra* note 522, at paras. 45, 114, 140 (summarizing the relevant case law and literature).

⁵²⁶ For details, see *supra* text accompanying note 407.

consider the facts of the case and even validate expulsion provisions that do not require a cause.⁵²⁷ However, they do not provide blanket validation of such clauses and do not generally defer to the parties' agreement. Entrepreneurs may take advantage of this legal framework to litigate the buyout, for instance by alleging that the firm had other, less drastic solutions at hand to avert the problems stemming from their continued presence in the firm. Therefore, it is unsurprising that practitioners have expressed concerns about the viability of bad leaver provisions.⁵²⁸

Furthermore, German corporate law significantly constrains contracting parties' freedom to set the forced buyout price. Share ownership enjoys the constitutional protection of property against expropriation.⁵²⁹ Against this background, the law rejects private ordering solutions entailing the loss of share ownership without full compensation for its economic value. As a consequence, bad leaver provisions stipulating that a disproportionately low buyout price shall be paid to the entrepreneur violate public policy⁵³⁰ and are thus null and void.⁵³¹ Courts generally consider the shares' market value as the benchmark for their fairness assessment.⁵³² Moreover, they decide what price is too low by balancing the company's need for cash against the departing shareholder's financial interests based on the specific circumstances of each case.⁵³³ They do not consider how these arrangements might influence future behavior. While this means that in some circumstances the court might accept a price lower than the market value and possibly even no compensation whatsoever for the bad leaver,⁵³⁴ this would be a rare

⁵²⁷ BGH, Sept. 19, 2005, 164 BGHZ 98, 107 (Ger.). (both validating an expulsion clause not requiring cause but having specific regard to the shareholders' position as a manager or valued employee having received their stake gratuitously or at a nominal price).

⁵²⁸ See Orrick Law Firm, *Venture Capital Deals in Germany (Legal Ninja Series)* (Nov. 11, 2021), at 115, <https://media.orrick.com/Media%20Library/public/files/insights/2021/olns-9-venture-capital-deals-in-germany.pdf> (pointing out the enforceability risk of such provisions regardless of the VC-backed firm's organizational form).

⁵²⁹ See *supra* note 84.

⁵³⁰ Under the doctrine of immorality: see *supra* note 275.

⁵³¹ Case law has confirmed this time and again. See, e.g., BGH, Jan. 22, 2023, 16 NZG 220, para. 16 (Ger.) (stating that in a privately held AG the constitutional guarantee requires that arrangements causing the loss of share ownership must imply safeguards against unfair expropriation, namely the fair value protections under the general clause of BGB § 138(1), prohibiting contracts that offend common decency). See also OLG München, AG 2017, 441, 445 (Ger.) (same). As to the GmbH, see, e.g., BGH, Jan. 22, 2013, 201 BGHZ 65 (Ger.) (holding that exclusion without compensation may gravely affect the shareholder's economic existence and freedom and thus justifies declaring the relevant provision null and void pursuant to BGB § 138(1)). The logic that courts have followed in reaching this conclusion is that even the grossest breach of duty by a shareholder is adequately punished by the exiting shareholder's loss of the company's future upside, whereas depriving them of the value of their past investment in the company by not granting any compensation would be unfair. BGH, Apr. 29, 2014, 17 NZG 820, paras. 17–18 (Ger.); see also BGH, Jan. 22, 2023, 16 NZG 220, para. 16 (Ger.) (voiding a clause contemplating an inappropriately low compensation). Scholars largely share this view. See, e.g., GRUNEWALD, *supra* note 436, at 174–175.

⁵³² See, e.g., BGH, Dec. 16, 1991, 116 BGHZ 359, 375–76 (Ger.).

⁵³³ Christian Kersting, § 34, in GMBHG, para. 27 (Ulrich Noack et al. eds., 23d ed. 2022). As regards VC contracts more specifically, see Tim Drygala, *Gerklärte und ungeklärte Fragen von Beteiligungsverträgen*, in VENTURE CAPITAL-BETEILIGUNGSVERTRÄGE UND “UNTERKOMPLEXITÄTSPROBLEME” 187, 202 (Tim Drygala & Gerhard H. Wächter eds., 2018) (reporting that VC-relevant factors in this weighting include the reason for the exclusion (a bad leaver case involving a serious breach of duty reduces the shareholder's legitimate interest in compensation) and the (intangible) value added to the company by the entrepreneur).

⁵³⁴ Some scholars have argued that setting the buyout price by reference to the initial investment is permitted. See Drygala, *supra* note 533, at 204. Scholars have also defended the viability of bad leaver provisions that set the price by reference to share book value. See, e.g., Oechsler, *supra* note 517, at para. 67 (representing the majority view that book value compensations are acceptable in closely held entrepreneurial firms organized as AGs); Strohn, *supra* note 522, at paras. 240, 270 (reaching similar conclusions for GmbHs). Courts have

outcome at best. Accordingly, practitioners strongly advise parties to draft bad leaver provisions with a fallback provision enabling the buyout of the entrepreneur at “the lowest permissible price.”⁵³⁵ This way, courts are prevented from invalidating the clause, but the arrangement is clearly inferior to U.S.-style bad leaver provisions.

Italian corporate law imposes similar hurdles. First, special safeguards are required that make bad leaver provisions impractical. For SPAs, blackletter corporate law explicitly allows for arrangements granting the firm or a shareholder a redemption right over the shares of another shareholder.⁵³⁶ However, with a view to protecting the status of shareholders and/or their property rights,⁵³⁷ courts require that such arrangements specify in detail the circumstances that trigger the forced buyout: more precisely, the trigger events must comprise factual circumstances that every shareholder can know *ex ante* and a court can ascertain *ex post*.⁵³⁸ Provisions that generically identify “misconduct” as the trigger event, or employ comparably broad language, would not qualify.

A forced buyout implies a share buyback, which is, in turn, subject to two further safeguards deriving from E.U. company law.⁵³⁹ First, the shareholder meeting must have approved the buyback and its terms.⁵⁴⁰ Second, the firm may only buy back shares to the extent that its latest financial statements display distributable profits or disposable reserves, unless a special resolution is taken to reduce the company’s legal capital.⁵⁴¹ The first requirement is troublesome for any VCF that does not control the shareholder meeting. The second one implies that, because cash-strapped VC-backed firms’ legal capital is usually set at a symbolic amount, share buybacks are rarely an option.

For SRLs, the charter may include provisions enabling the forced buyout of a shareholder, provided that specific circumstances justifying it are identified.⁵⁴² Building on unanimous scholarship,⁵⁴³ courts have repeatedly held that the requirement that circumstances be specified is of quintessential importance to protect the shareholder’s status and/or property in their shares, and, hence, must be strictly interpreted.⁵⁴⁴ Similar to SPAs, the events that trigger the shareholder’s forced buyout must thus comprise specifically described factual

occasionally confirmed this. See BGH, June 12, 1975, 65 BGHZ 22 (Ger.) (upholding a price reflecting the net asset value of a GmbH). An influential scholar has held that bad-leaver provisions allowing a buyout of the entrepreneur with no compensation whatsoever are viable in GmbHs. See Holger Altmeppen, § 34, in GMBH, para. 59 (Holger Altmeppen ed., 11th ed. 2023).

⁵³⁵ Bank & Möllmann, *supra* note 15, paras. 295–97 (acknowledging enforcement risks and advocating fallback provisions that set “the lowest permissible value” as compensation). The case law generally supports the viability of fallback provisions but does not indicate if a proviso stipulating a reduction to the “lowest permissible value” would be valid. See, e.g., BGH, DStR 2011, 2418 (Ger.).

⁵³⁶ See art. 2437-sexies, *codice civile* (It.). For details, see, e.g., Matteo L. Vitali, LE AZIONI RISCATTABILI 51–107 (2013) (discussing the regime on share redemptions, including the general limits within which SPAs can buy back).

⁵³⁷ As discussed, Italian corporate law in action reflects the view that shareholders are entitled to benefit from the constitutional protection of private property. See *supra* note 84. Besides, it also reflects the view that the shareholder enjoys a right to preserve their position *qua* shareholder that severely limits contracting parties’ ability to craft forced buyback clauses as they see fit.

⁵³⁸ See, e.g., Trib. Milano, 2 May 2017.

⁵³⁹ See Directive (EU) 2017/1132, arts. 60, 61, 2017 O.J. (L 169) 46.

⁵⁴⁰ See art. 2357, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.).

⁵⁴¹ See art. 2357-ter, comma 2, *codice civile* (It.).

⁵⁴² See art. 2473-bis, *codice civile* (It.).

⁵⁴³ Paolo Ghionni Crivelli Visconti, *Selezione ed operatività delle cause di esclusione del socio di s.r.l.*, in SOCIETÀ, *supra* note 84, at 1769.

⁵⁴⁴ Most recently see Tribunale di Napoli [Naples Court], 11 Apr. 2023, and Tribunale di Catanzaro [Catanzaro Court], 31 Oct. 2023 (It.). Solidly established scholarship supports these courts’ arguments. See, e.g., Paolo Piscitello, *Recesso e esclusione nella s.r.l.*, in 3 IL NUOVO DIRITTO DELLE SOCIETÀ. LIBER AMICORUM GIAN FRANCO CAMPOBASSO 718, 737 (Pietro Abbadessa & Giuseppe B. Portale eds. 2006).

circumstances, so that every shareholder can know them *ex ante* and a court can ascertain them *ex post*.⁵⁴⁵ Arrangements that identify as triggers “misconduct” or even “severe misconduct implying an important breach of the obligations stemming from the corporate contract” are therefore to be regarded as insufficiently determined and thus to be declared null and void.⁵⁴⁶

A second set of constraints affects parties’ freedom to set the forced buyout price. Arrangements that enable the firm or a shareholder to compel another shareholder to divest are valid solely if they are drafted in compliance with the fair value principle.⁵⁴⁷ Bad leaver provisions compel divestment, implying that the shareholder who is being bought out on the basis of the bad leaver has the right to receive at least the price that they would have received if they had exercised their withdrawal right.⁵⁴⁸ Bad leaver provisions that do not include this proviso are null and void.⁵⁴⁹

VCFs and entrepreneurs seeking to work around these corporate law constraints would not achieve much. In AGs, contracting parties have resorted to shareholder agreements that grant the VC-backed firm or the VCF a call option on the entrepreneur’s shares.⁵⁵⁰ But this may prove an illusory solution. To begin with, courts could see a call option as a circumvention of the prohibition on exerting pressure on shareholders.⁵⁵¹ Besides, a call option forces a shareholder to sell their shares, triggering the legal framework established in case law for expulsion provisions. This makes the call option’s validity dependent on the existence of an important reason,⁵⁵² regardless of whether such arrangements appear in the firm’s charter or in shareholder agreements.⁵⁵³ Even if one accepts that bad leaver provisions are in line with the relevant case law,⁵⁵⁴ the precise scope for private ordering would remain unclear. Commentators argue that “quasi-expulsion rights” arising from bad leaver provision are only acceptable for a limited period.⁵⁵⁵ Transactional practice regularly conforms to these observations.⁵⁵⁶ Finally, contracting parties cannot bypass constraints on setting the redemption or purchase price by resorting to shareholder agreements because those constraints apply irrespective of whether the price is set in the firm’s charter or in a shareholder agreement.⁵⁵⁷

⁵⁴⁵ For references to the case law, see the previous footnote. In the literature, see, e.g., Gionni Crivelli Visconti, *supra* note 542, at 1777–83.

⁵⁴⁶ See, e.g., Trib. Napoli, 22 Mar. 2022 (It.). For a comprehensive overview of the consistent case law on this point, see Casimiro A. Nigro & Giovanni Romano, *Diritto vivente e istituti morenti: l’esclusione del socio di s.r.l. (venti anni dopo la riforma organica)* (on file with authors), 19–21.

⁵⁴⁷ See *supra* note 306.

⁵⁴⁸ See, e.g., Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 88*, *supra* note 306.

⁵⁴⁹ *Id.*

⁵⁵⁰ See, e.g., Winkler, *supra* note 195, at 203 (proposing this workaround). This approach has gained traction over time, as the literature reports. See, e.g., KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 733.

⁵⁵¹ See *supra* note 511. Some commentators have argued against qualifying these call options as illegitimate avoidance of the law. See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 732 (arguing for the validity of such arrangements); Winkler, *supra* note 195, at 203 (same). To date, courts have not resolved the matter.

⁵⁵² For a summary of the case law, see Priester, *supra* note 276, at 1142.

⁵⁵³ *Id.* at 1142–43.

⁵⁵⁴ Two precedents can be read as allowing expulsion for a “special reason” if shareholders no longer provide the managerial services they owe under a labor or service contract. See BGH, Sept. 19, 2005, 164 BGHZ 98 (Ger.); BGH, Sept. 19, 2005, 164 BGHZ 107 (Ger.). Scholars come to similar conclusions. See KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 731; Deng, *supra* note 76, at 745 (arguing that bad leaver provisions can amount to an established trade custom).

⁵⁵⁵ Priester, *supra* note 276, at 1148–49 (stressing that sunset clauses play a crucial role for the justification of the respective provisions and concluding that a 10-year call option is not justifiable).

⁵⁵⁶ See Bank & Möllmann, *supra* note 15, at para. 262 (suggesting a period of validity between two and five years).

⁵⁵⁷ BGH, Jan. 22, 2023, 16 NZG 220, para. 17 (Ger.) (for the AG); BGH, Dec. 16, 1991, 116 BGHZ 359, 374 (Ger.) (for the GmbH).

In Italian VC deals, contracting parties could resort: (a) in SPAs, to arrangements on shareholder expulsion;⁵⁵⁸ (b) in SRLs, to arrangements granting one shareholder the right, possibly *ad personam*, to redeem the shares of another shareholder.⁵⁵⁹ Yet, the regulatory constraints we refer to above⁵⁶⁰ are applicable to any arrangement compelling a shareholder to divest, because they address deeply rooted scholars', legal gatekeepers', and courts' concerns that extend to any arrangement causing a shareholder to divest, regardless of its transactional structure.⁵⁶¹ Alternatively, contracting parties could resort to arrangements granting the VC-backed firm and/or, depending on its organizational form,⁵⁶² the VCF the right to redeem the shares of the entrepreneur or cause their expulsion, in combination with an arrangement requiring the entrepreneur to pay a "penalty." Scholars and practitioners consider these arrangements viable, because the entrepreneur would formally receive the fair value of their shares, although they would subsequently return a fraction thereof to the firm as payment of the penalty.⁵⁶³ Yet, these arrangements suffer from at least one main limitation that stems from the general regime governing penalty clauses.⁵⁶⁴ Under general contract law, the penalty may not be "excessive," which means that the entrepreneur may ask a court to review its amount under that (vague) standard.⁵⁶⁵

To sum up, not only do German and Italian corporate laws thwart contracting parties' attempts to import U.S.-style bad leaver provisions into local VC deals, but they also compel them to adopt alternative arrangements that, although with some differences in the two jurisdictions, are themselves subject to regulatory constraints. These constraints stand in the way of their smooth, unchallenged use and rule out the possibility of defining the trigger events in broad terms and setting a punitive price. As a result, the German and Italian versions of bad leaver provisions perform weakly as a deterrent against opportunistic behavior and therefore are inferior to the U.S. model.

⁵⁵⁸ Scholars consider such arrangements viable (as long as the SPA's shareholder basis is a widely dispersed). See, e.g., Alessandro Benussi, *Considerazioni in ordine alla estromissione forzata del socio nelle società di capitali: esclusione e riscatto*, in *IL DIRITTO SOCIETARIO OGGI: PERSISTENZE E INNOVAZIONI. STUDI IN ONORE DI GIUSEPPE ZANARONE* 63 (Paolo Benazzo et al. eds., 2011) (holding arrangements on shareholder expulsion in SPAs as legal).

⁵⁵⁹ See, e.g., Renato Santagata, *Art. 2468*, in *S.R.L. COMMENTARIO DEDICATO A G.B. PORTALE*, 284, 287 (Angelo A. Dolmetta & Gaetano Presti eds., 2011). See also Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *supra* note 558. Practitioners also admit the possibility of granting a shareholder a right incorporated in their shares (thus, not a right *ad personam*). See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 153*, *supra* note 306.

⁵⁶⁰ See *supra* text accompanying notes 536–548.

⁵⁶¹ According to scholars, the fair value principle applies irrespective of the transaction's structure. See *supra* note 306.

⁵⁶² Recall that SRLs may not buy back shares other than to service stock compensation plans in SME SRLs. See *supra* note 77.

⁵⁶³ Scholars seem to defend the viability of these arrangements. See, e.g., Luca Barchi, *L'esclusione del socio nella società a responsabilità limitata*, 19 *NOTARIATO* 149 (2006). Practitioners endorse this approach. See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 198 of 23 Nov. 2021* "*Penali statutarie e liquidazione delle azioni in caso di riscatto o esclusione*", <https://www.consiglionotarilemilano.it/massime-commissione-societa/massima-n-198-del-23-novembre-2021-penali-statutarie-e-liquidazione-delle-azioni-in-caso-di-riscatto-o-esclusione-artt-2342-2345-2437-sexies-2473-bis-c-c/>.

⁵⁶⁴ See artt. 1382–1384, *codice civile* (It.).

⁵⁶⁵ Art. 1384, *codice civile* (It.). Practitioners share this view. See Consiglio Notarile di Milano, *Massima No. 198*, *supra* note 563.

3. Exit

VCF investments' success is contingent on the effective exit from portfolio companies.⁵⁶⁶ Regulatory constraints on exit rights and their exercise inevitably affect VCFs' portfolio valuation and, *ex ante*, their decision to invest, ultimately with an impact on the development of the VC market.⁵⁶⁷ In the U.S., VCFs secure special prerogatives to trigger and control the process leading to divestment transactions.⁵⁶⁸ They also contract for protections in the reverse scenario in which the entrepreneur triggers an exit event.⁵⁶⁹

An example of the latter are tag-along rights provisions—that is, arrangements allowing VCFs to sell their shares, possibly on a *pro rata* basis, under the same terms and conditions if the entrepreneur sells their shares to a third party.⁵⁷⁰ These are indeed the only U.S.-style arrangements that VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under both German and Italian corporate laws can plainly transplant.⁵⁷¹ The array of exit-related provisions in U.S. VC contracts is, however, much richer. It includes waivers of the fiduciary duty of loyalty and drag-along rights to govern trade sales as well as redemption rights.

i. Provisions Related to Trade Sales, including Drag-along Rights Provisions

VCFs exit their companies mainly through trade sales⁵⁷²—that is, a sale of the entire company to a competitor or a financial acquirer.⁵⁷³ Trade sales can be executed through various transactional techniques: mergers, share transfers, and asset sales.⁵⁷⁴ These transactions are exposed to litigation risk, particularly when the VCF decides to (a) sell an underperforming portfolio firm or (b) liquidate it as the fund approaches its maturity and must generate liquidity to pay back its own investors.⁵⁷⁵ Whether due to temporary inefficiencies in the M&A market and/or the liquidity pressure under which the VCF takes the relevant decisions, the resulting trade sales often end up sacrificing value.⁵⁷⁶ Due to liquidation preferences, VCFs may be largely or even entirely insensitive to the value-decreasing consequences of such

⁵⁶⁶ Bernard S. Black & Ronald J. Gilson, *Venture Capital and the Structure of Capital Markets: Banks versus Stock Markets*, 47 J. FIN. ECON. 243 (1998).

⁵⁶⁷ See Douglas Cumming et al., *Legality and Venture Capital Exits*, 12 J. CORP. FIN. 214, 216 (2006).

⁵⁶⁸ See, e.g., D. Gordon Smith, *The Exit Structure of Venture Capital*, 53 UCLA L. REV. 315 (2005). Recall we do not cover VCFs' IPO-related rights. See *supra* note 109.

⁵⁶⁹ *Id.*

⁵⁷⁰ See PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 214–18.

⁵⁷¹ See Holger Fleischer & Stephan Schneider, *Tag along- und Drag along-Klauseln in geschlossenen Kapitalgesellschaften*, 65 DER BETRIEB 961, 961–62 (2012) (discussing such arrangements and concluding for their viability); Nicola De Luca, *Vengo anch'io, no tu no. Tre lustri di clause di accodamento e trascinamento*, 20 ANALISI GIURIDICA DELL'ECONOMIA 329, 333 (2021) (same).

⁵⁷² Klausner & Venuto, *supra* note 109, at 1403. For recent data about the exit channel deployed by U.S. VC-backed firms, see Amor & Kooli, *supra* note 109.

⁵⁷³ Casimiro A. Nigro & Jorg R. Stahl, *Venture Capital-Backed Firms, Unavoidable Value-Destroying Trade Sales, and Fair Value Protections*, 22 EUR. BUS. ORG. L. REV. 39, 56 (2021).

⁵⁷⁴ For details and references, *Id.* at 57.

⁵⁷⁵ These transactions are the function of the termination option that VCFs receive under standard U.S. VC contracts. This termination option is the function of the braiding of the contract governing VCFs and the contract governing VC-backed firms. It aims at enabling VCFs to terminate investments that perform poorly and/or divest at the latest as the VCF approaches its maturity and thus needs to generate the liquidity required to meet its own investors' capital calls. For details and references, *id.* at 54.

⁵⁷⁶ See *Id.*, at 58–63 for the relevant theoretical framework. For empirical evidence, see Bo Bian et al., *Conflicting Fiduciary Duties and Fire Sales of VC-backed Start-ups* (LawFin Working Paper No. 35) (2023), <https://ssrn.com/abstract=4139724> (finding an up to 23% discount for VC-backed firms sold as the VCF approaches its end).

transactions.⁵⁷⁷ This can leave entrepreneurs with little if not nothing at all. From a purely *ex post* perspective, entrepreneurs can be viewed as victims of VCF opportunism. Entrepreneurs will find it more or less rewarding to challenge trade sales before a court of law depending on whether judges give more weight to the original deal terms or to how the parties actually behaved.⁵⁷⁸

By default, Delaware law provides for significant protections for dissenting shareholders in the situations just described, in the form of both derivative suits for violations of the duty of loyalty and appraisal rights.⁵⁷⁹ Empirical evidence shows that entrepreneurs use fiduciary standards to challenge trade sales in court and extract more money from these transactions.⁵⁸⁰ Parties respond to the risks that trade sales pose by opting out of the relevant rules and doctrines, thus reducing the risk of litigation.⁵⁸¹ U.S. VC contracts stipulate in shareholder agreements that the entrepreneur must abstain from suing VCFs and directors for any breach of their duty of loyalty connected to a sale of the firm, including a trade sale.⁵⁸² Besides, drag-along rights provisions specify that, in the event of a trade sale, the VCF has the right to instruct the entrepreneur on how to vote their shares. If entrepreneurs comply with the instructions and actually vote in favor of the transaction, they lose their appraisal right.⁵⁸³ Finally, drag-along rights provisions stipulate that, if the board approves the transaction, the VCF has the right to sell the entrepreneur's shares at the same terms and conditions as their own, without depending on the entrepreneur's cooperation.⁵⁸⁴

Trade sales are the predominant exit channels for VCFs in Europe as well.⁵⁸⁵ However, German and Italian corporate laws prevent VCFs and entrepreneurs from transplanting U.S. private ordering arrangements and, thus, from achieving comparable outcomes irrespective of the trade sale's transactional form.

Let us start with mergers. German and Italian corporate laws preclude VCFs and entrepreneurs from choosing how to structure trade sales. Under both corporate law regimes, the shareholders of merging firms, consistent with E.U. law,⁵⁸⁶ have the right to receive shares—rather than solely cash—as compensation, even though in Italy this applies only to mergers involving SPAs.⁵⁸⁷ This requirement rules out straightforward cash-for-stock mergers,

⁵⁷⁷ Nigro & Stahl, *supra* note 573, at 70–73.

⁵⁷⁸ U.S. case law includes a very illustrative example: the *Trados* case. See *supra* note 57. For a detailed account of the litigated facts, see Abraham Cable, *Does Trados Matter?*, 45 J. CORP. L. 311, 312–20 (2019).

⁵⁷⁹ See DGCL §§ 144, 262.

⁵⁸⁰ Brian Broughman & Jesse Fried, *Renegotiation of Cash-flow Rights in the Sale of VC-backed Firms*, 95 J. FIN. ECON. 384 (2010).

⁵⁸¹ Jill E. Fisch, *A Lesson from Startups: Contracting out of Shareholder Appraisal*, 107 IOWA L. REV. 941, 961, 976–77 (2022).

⁵⁸² NVCA, *Model Legal Documents – Voting Agreement* (Jan. 2024), at 8, <https://nvca.org/recommends/nvca-va-updated-january-2024/>. Recall that, according to case law, such covenants not to assert claims for breach of fiduciary duty in connection with a trade sale executed based on a drag-along rights provision is valid if it is explicit and does not exculpate “intentional wrongdoing.” See *supra* note 66.

⁵⁸³ On appraisal waivers as components of the contractual framework for VC deals, Fisch, *supra* note 581, at 961. Case law has explicitly confirmed their enforceability. See *supra* note 66.

⁵⁸⁴ MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 687. Note that the approval of the board in the case of a share transfer is not required under the applicable corporate law regime but is commonly required by the acquirer, who wants to be sure that the transaction has a “friendly” nature.

⁵⁸⁵ See Andrea Bellucci et al., *supra* note 109.

⁵⁸⁶ Directive (EU) 2017/1132, arts. 89, 90, 2017 O.J. (L 169) 46. But see also *id.*, art. 166 (authorizing Member States to subject functionally equivalent transactions to a regime that does not provide for such a cap on cash payments to shareholders).

⁵⁸⁷ See Umwandlungsgesetz [UmwG] [Merger Act], Oct. 28, 1994, BGBl. I at 3210, last amended by G Oct. 23, 2024, BGBl. I No. 323, § 54 para. 4 (Ger.) (limiting the cash component in the compensation of the shareholders of the acquired company to 10 per cent of the nominal value of the shares the acquiring company

which in turn implies that mergers as a transactional technique to execute a trade sale are not an option to liquidate an investment, except if the acquirer is a large publicly listed firm with highly liquid stock, allowing for the immediate and unimpaired realization of the cash-value of the shares the VCF receives.

If VCFs were willing to execute trade sales as stock-for-stock mergers, the relevant regime would still erect insurmountable obstacles to arrangements that are commonplace in U.S. VC deals, especially in Germany.

Under German corporate law, mergers require approval at both the shareholder and board level.⁵⁸⁸ Directors and controlling shareholders have to comply with a duty of loyalty that commands them to advance the firm's interest, rather than that of an individual shareholder, and take other stakeholders' interests into account.⁵⁸⁹ This duty of loyalty is mandatory in nature.⁵⁹⁰ The board and general shareholder meeting resolutions to initiate and execute a trade sale serving the liquidity needs of the VCF or its termination interest in an underperforming venture may be challenged as instrumental to pursuing exclusively the interest of one shareholder. In addition, merging firms' shareholders can have their shares appraised, regardless of whether they vote in favor or against the merger.⁵⁹¹ The regime on appraisal rights is also mandatory.⁵⁹² Against this background, any attempt to deflate the significant litigation risk *ex ante* would prove pointless. Arrangements such as the covenant not to sue *à la Delaware* as well as waivers of the German remedy corresponding to the U.S. appraisal right would simply be null and void.⁵⁹³

In Italy, mergers require approval at both the shareholder and board level.⁵⁹⁴ Directors are generally under the duty to advance the interest of the company.⁵⁹⁵ Controlling shareholders, instead, can take any action they want, subject only to the constraint of the so-called abuse of majority doctrine, which prevents those in control from using their prerogatives to advance their own interest (as opposed to the firm's interest) through actions aimed to harm

allotted for the share exchange pursuant to UmwG, § 5 para. 1, No. 3). The prevailing view is that the 10 per cent cap for cash compensation is mandatory. See Bundesfinanzhof, Feb. 14, 2022, 276 ENTSCHIEDUNGEN DES BUNDESFINANZHOFES [BFHE] 216, para. 19. In the literature, see, e.g., Dieter Mayer, § 54, in *UMWANDLUNGSRECHT KOMMENTAR*, para. 65 (Sigfried Widmann & Dieter Mayer eds., 172d suppl., 2018). For Italy, see art. 2501-ter, *codice civile* (It.) (stipulating that the cash component of a merger cannot exceed 10 per cent). *But* see art. 2505-quater, *codice civile* (It.) (stipulating that art. 2501-ter does not apply to mergers involving companies other than SPAs). Building on these provisions, the prevailing view amongst scholars is that the cash component in mergers involving SPAs can *never* exceed 10 per cent. See, e.g., Giuliana Scognamiglio, *Le fusioni e le scissioni semplificate nella riforma del diritto societario*, 57 RIVISTA DEL NOTARIATO 889, 891–92 (2003).

⁵⁸⁸ See §§ 13(1), 50, 65 UmwG (Ger.) (requiring a shareholder resolution in the GmbH and the AG, which is typically initiated by the board).

⁵⁸⁹ For details and references, see *supra* note 407.

⁵⁹⁰ For references, see *supra* note 314.

⁵⁹¹ See UmwG §§ 15, 34 (Ger.) (stipulating the shareholder's individual right to bring an action to have the value of their shares determined by a court and the exclusive competency of the court to determine fair value). This appraisal procedure is a remedy that the shareholders of any company involved in a merger can use irrespective of its organizational form. For details, see, e.g., Tobias Quill & Florian Follert, *Spruchverfahren als Geschäftsmodell: Wenn die "angemessene" Abfindung negativ ist – Betriebswirtschaftliche Überlegungen zur vollen Kompensation von Berufs Antragstellern*, 66 DIE AKTIENGESELLSCHAFT 696 (2021).

⁵⁹² The German regime governing mergers is generally mandatory. See UmwG § 1 para 3 (Ger.).

⁵⁹³ *Cf.*, e.g., Tim Drygala, § 1 in *UMWANDLUNGSGESETZ*, para. 63 (Marcus Lutter ed., 7th ed. 2023), (discussing the very narrow room for private ordering solutions).

⁵⁹⁴ See artt. 2501, 2502, *codice civile* (It.) (stipulating that the board initiates the process by drafting and approving the merger plan and stipulating the requirement of shareholder approval of such a plan).

⁵⁹⁵ For details, see *supra* note 429 and corresponding text.

minority shareholders.⁵⁹⁶ This implies that a shareholder who wants to have the shareholder resolution approving the merger voided by a court must prove that those in control (a) have secured a special benefit (b) by taking actions that were deliberately aimed to jeopardize the minority's interest.⁵⁹⁷ However, once recorded in the companies' register, the transaction can no longer be challenged. After that, disgruntled shareholders are left with the sole option to sue the company or its successor for damages.⁵⁹⁸

This regime is mandatory and applies irrespective of the firm's organizational form.⁵⁹⁹ Additionally, shareholders who have not voted in favor of the merger are granted withdrawal rights—which are similar to U.S. appraisal rights.⁶⁰⁰ To be sure, unlike for SRLs, for SPAs, blackletter law does not stipulate that shareholders can exercise their withdrawal rights in the event of a merger. Yet, when it is the case that, first, the charter of the incorporating company contains clauses that are absent from the charter of the incorporated one and, second, their inclusion in the charter of a stand-alone company via an amendment would have given rise to withdrawal rights,⁶⁰¹ then a merger with such characteristics also leads to withdrawal rights for the shareholders of the incorporated company.⁶⁰²

Under such a regime, achieving results comparable to those in the U.S. is impossible. In addition, trade sales executed to advance the sole interest of VCFs to terminate underperforming firms or generate liquidity would be exposed to litigation risk under the abuse of majority doctrine,⁶⁰³ even though, as we have seen,⁶⁰⁴ once the merger is recorded in the companies' register, the entrepreneur's hand is much weaker and its litigation threat hardly credible. VCFs and entrepreneurs may nonetheless want to deflate any residual litigation risks at the bargaining table. Courts may accept a shareholder agreement that prevents entrepreneurs from suing VCFs in their capacity as controlling shareholders but would certainly take a critical view of provisions that limit shareholders' rights to sue directors. Such limitations are held to be problematic because they could make directors unaccountable and encourage irresponsible management of the firm. For this reason, courts typically rule that agreements limiting

⁵⁹⁶ The abuse of the majority doctrine is chiefly an offspring of the duty of good faith—which informs the implementation of any contract. See art. 1375, *codice civile* (It.). Yet, the corporate law provisions on shareholders' conflicts of interest have traditionally played a complementary role in elaborating the construct of the abuse of the majority. See artt. 2373, 2479-ter, *codice civile* (It.). For a discussion, see Mosco & Lopreiato, *supra* note 429, at 122–23.

⁵⁹⁷ See, e.g., Trib. Milano, 30 Jan. 2017 (accounting for the preconditions required for the existence of an abuse of the majority) (It.). In the literature, see, e.g., Alessandro Simoniato, *PROFILI E LIMITI DEL CONTROLLO SULLA MAGGIORANZA NELLE SOCIETÀ DI CAPITALI* 39–47 (2023) (also accounting for how case law has defined over time and currently defines abuse of the majority). A similar regime also applies to minority shareholders under the so-called abuse of minority doctrine. For details, see Antonio Nuzzo, *L'ABUSO DELLA MINORANZA. POTERE, RESPONSABILITÀ E DANNO NELL'ESERCIZIO DEL VOTO* (2003).

⁵⁹⁸ See art. 2504-quater, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.) (stipulating that, once all the formalities of a merger have been executed, a court cannot declare the invalidity of the transaction and that, after that moment, shareholders only have an action for damages). This regime applies to mergers in general, irrespective of their business organizational form. For details, see Danilo Beltrami, *LA RESPONSABILITÀ PER DANNO DA FUSIONE* 1–23 (2008).

⁵⁹⁹ See *supra* note 96 and accompanying text.

⁶⁰⁰ See Paolo Guaragnella, *Diritto di disinvestimento: un'analisi comparatistica tra diritto di recesso e "appraisal right" statunitense*, 7 RIVISTA DI DIRITTO SOCIETARIO 766 (2013).

⁶⁰¹ See art. 2437, *codice civile* (It.) (outlining the instances in which the shareholder has such a withdrawal right in SPAs).

⁶⁰² See Vincenzo Di Cataldo, *Il recesso del socio di società per azioni*, in *IL NUOVO DIRITTO*, *supra* note 544, 219, 227.

⁶⁰³ See *supra* text accompanying note 597.

⁶⁰⁴ *Supra* text preceding note 598.

shareholders' rights to sue directors are null and void.⁶⁰⁵ Besides, arrangements waiving the right to sue the company for the damages caused to an individual shareholder would likely be null and void, too, because the shareholder's individual right of action in this context is considered key to ensuring appropriate levels of minority protection in mergers.⁶⁰⁶ Finally, arrangements in shareholder agreements that waive withdrawal rights would also be void.⁶⁰⁷

Nor could VCFs and entrepreneurs achieve results comparable to those of U.S. deals practice by structuring a trade sale as a share co-transfer based on drag-along rights provisions. Most commentators consider drag-along rights provisions included in the charter of AGs as null and void, because they create an additional shareholder obligation to those resulting from mandatory corporate law, which private ordering cannot alter.⁶⁰⁸ And while drag-along rights provisions are permitted in GmbHs⁶⁰⁹ regardless of whether they are included in the firm's charter or in shareholder agreements,⁶¹⁰ transactions executed on the basis of these arrangements are subject to judicial review along two critical dimensions. On the one hand, fiduciary standards apply to the compelled share co-transfer, enabling courts to ascertain whether the decision to sell aligns with the company's interest.⁶¹¹ On the other, German courts have a tradition of carefully reviewing the sale price.⁶¹² This regime generates two problems. First, it creates uncertainty as to what actions the VCF can or cannot take to further its own interest in creating liquidity and/or terminating ailing ventures.⁶¹³ Second, it deprives the VCF of the unfettered discretion to set the deal's terms and price. Transactional practice responds to

⁶⁰⁵ See Alberto Picciau, *Sulla validità dei patti parasociali di rinuncia all'azione di responsabilità e di manleva nella S.p.A.*, 61 RIVISTA DELLE SOCIETÀ 282, 288–92 (2016) (summarizing the case law that concludes that shareholder agreements preventing the acquirer of a controlling stake from suing directors for breach of their fiduciary duties are invalid).

⁶⁰⁶ BELTRAMI, *supra* note 598, at 191.

⁶⁰⁷ See art. 2437, comma 6, *codice civile* (It.) (stipulating that “any agreement that impedes or complicates the exercise of withdrawal rights” is null and void). Based on that provision (specifically, the locution “any agreement”), scholars rule out not only waivers of such withdrawal rights included in the firm's charter, but also analogous provisions in shareholder agreements. A similar provision is in place for SRLs. See art. 2473, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.). For details, see Casimiro A. Nigro & Demetrio Maltese, *Private equity, mergers e waiver dell'appraisal right: note su un caso statunitense con cenni all'esperienza italiana*, 22 RIVISTA DI DIRITTO SOCIETARIO 631, 655–58 (2022).

⁶⁰⁸ See, e.g., Fleischer & Schneider, *supra* note 571, at 964. On the rigidity of AG law, see generally *supra* note 94.

⁶⁰⁹ Fleischer & Schneider, *supra* note 571, at 964.

⁶¹⁰ To be sure, it is not entirely clear whether drag-along rights provisions are valid. Because they give one shareholder the right to compel another shareholder to divest, such provisions are regarded as functionally equivalent to expulsion clauses. See, e.g., Priester, *supra* note 276, at 1139; and Barbara Grunewald, *Wann kann ein geschäftsführender Gesellschafter ohne besonderen Anlass aus seiner Gesellschaft ausgeschlossen werden?*, 42 ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR WIRTSCHAFTSRECHT 433, 436 (2021). As such, they are subject to judicial review under a public policy test. See *supra* text preceding note 275. In the case law, see, e.g., OLG München, May 13, 2020, 23 NEUE ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT 903 (2020) (Ger.). Scholars frequently conclude that drag-along rights provisions pass this test, because the entrepreneur divests along with the VCF, and this represents a legitimate objective criterion rooted in the VC business model, ruling out the risk of arbitrary expulsion of the entrepreneur. See, e.g., Priester, *supra* note 276, at 1147; and Fleischer & Schneider, *supra* note 571, at 966. Yet, there is no conclusive case law, leaving some uncertainty about the limits of permissible arrangements. See Denga, *supra* note 76, at 763.

⁶¹¹ Drag-along rights provisions function are seen as expulsion rights because they compel entrepreneurs to sell their shares. Courts thus primarily review the exercise of such rights based on fiduciary standards. See, e.g., Fleischer & Schneider, *supra* note 571, at 967. See also Heribert Heckschen & Jannik Weitbrecht, *Die Kontrolle des Gesellschafterkreises*, 24 NEUE ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR GESELLSCHAFTSRECHT 709, 712 (2021) (showing that, when they engage in this review, courts conduct a holistic assessment of the circumstances of the individual case).

⁶¹² The judicial tendency echoes what we reported for bad leaver provisions. See *supra* text accompanying notes 529–534.

⁶¹³ See *supra* notes 589–590 and accompanying text.

this regime by incorporating into drag-along rights provisions a proviso that assigns to a designated third party the task of determining firm value,⁶¹⁴ thereby increasing transactional uncertainty further.

Italian corporate law complicates the execution of trade sales in the form of compelled share co-transfer in two ways. First, under existing case law, the dragging shareholder (the VCF in the VC-backed company) has a duty to act fairly towards the dragged shareholder (the entrepreneur).⁶¹⁵ The *ex post* determination of fairness⁶¹⁶ follows categories that are not transaction-specific and thus generate problems of under- and/or over-inclusiveness as to what constitutes legitimate and abusive conduct.⁶¹⁷ Further, case law makes the validity of drag-along rights provisions contingent on the inclusion of a proviso stipulating that the dragged-along shareholder will not receive a price lower than the one determined according to the criteria that define the value of shares in the case of withdrawal.⁶¹⁸ These implicit rules and standards imply that the VCF can be exposed to the claim that it has carried out a trade sale just to secure the special advantage of cashing out its own liquidation preferences and/or that it has acted with no concern for the consequences that its action may have on the entrepreneur.⁶¹⁹ The risk of judicial second-guessing is particularly concerning for VCFs because these transactions often result in asymmetric distributions of firm value between VCFs and entrepreneurs⁶²⁰—a situation Italian courts may find problematic particularly because of their tendency to only aim at *ex post* fairness.⁶²¹ Since these implicit rules build upon the law on fiduciary relationships, an opt-out is ruled out.⁶²² Contracting parties cannot draft drag-along rights provisions that omit the prescribed floor either.⁶²³

Alternative arrangements in this area are unavailable. Under German and Italian corporate laws, arrangements that may insulate directors, the VCF *qua* controlling shareholder, and the company itself from litigation risk are hard to design: the relevant regimes apply very broadly to any alternative arrangements that may substitute for *ex ante* waivers. The same is true for arrangements aiming to put a cap on the entrepreneur's right to receive the fair value of their shares.⁶²⁴

⁶¹⁴ See, e.g., Weitnauer, *supra* note 132, at para. 202; and Christoph H. Seibt, § 2, in MÜNCHENER ANWALTS HANDBUCH GMBH-RECHT, para. 314 (Volker Römelmann ed., 4th ed. 2018).

⁶¹⁵ Lodo Arbitrale, Jul. 29, 2008, 61 BANCA BORSA E TITOLI DI CREDITO 506 (2009) (incidentally affirming the existence of such a fiduciary duty and elaborating on its legal basis) (It.).

⁶¹⁶ Scholars have further elaborated on the implications of the underlying fiduciary duty and held that the VCF has full discretion in executing the transaction and defining its terms and conditions, provided that it does not: (a) seek to secure any special advantage for itself; (b) take decisions driven by the goal of cashing out the value of its investment regardless of the consequences this may have on the entrepreneur. See Mazzoni, *supra* note 96, at 249–50 (detailing the contents of the dragging shareholder's fiduciary duty by noting that, in implementing the corporate contract, the dragging shareholder, being formally a shareholder, must pursue the interest of a prototypical shareholder, with the consequence that they are not allowed to advance their own interest as if they were a creditor by, for instance, cashing out their investment through a sale of the assets of the company regardless of the costs that the company may bear as a consequence) and at 251 (suggesting that any transaction whereby a shareholder secures a special advantage for themselves is tantamount to self-dealing).

⁶¹⁷ See *supra* note 96.

⁶¹⁸ See Tribunale di Roma [Rome Court], 15 Jan. 2020 (It.).

⁶¹⁹ Mosco & Nigro, *supra* note 96, at 276.

⁶²⁰ See *supra* text preceding note 183.

⁶²¹ Mosco & Nigro, *supra* note 96, at 276.

⁶²² See *supra* note 87.

⁶²³ See *supra* text accompanying note 618. Transactional practice is consistent with this assessment. Cf. Giudici et al., *supra* note 14, 811 (reporting that the charters of the VC-backed firms they analyze “constantly refer to the fair value determination” and “that no contractual attempt can be observed to escape a principle that is clearly considered imperative.”).

⁶²⁴ See *supra* note 618 and accompanying text.

In German VC deals, arrangements aiming to curtail the entrepreneur's right to receive the fair value of their shares are difficult to justify even in the more flexible GmbH structure. This is because they are only considered legitimate when they serve the purpose of preventing a liquidity drain on the company.⁶²⁵ However, this concern is not relevant in a trade sale where the drag-along right is exercised between shareholders, as such transactions do not affect the VC-backed company's existing cash reserves. These arrangements are similarly void under Italian corporate law.⁶²⁶

One could also try to escape existing regulatory constraints by structuring trade sales as asset deals. However, such strategic transactional arbitrage would prove both fraught with pitfalls and largely ineffective. Under German and Italian corporate laws, directors must abide by the duty of loyalty also in asset deals,⁶²⁷ implying that they cannot execute transactions serving chiefly or exclusively the VCF's interest.⁶²⁸ As mentioned, private ordering is nearly powerless in redefining the contents of the duty of loyalty in both jurisdictions.⁶²⁹ Besides, under both corporate law regimes, the sale of substantially all assets requires the approval of shareholders,⁶³⁰ with their voting subject to duty of loyalty review, at least in Germany.⁶³¹ Finally, asset deals trigger fair value protections under German corporate law and, to a lesser

⁶²⁵ In the case law, see BGH, Dec. 16, 1991, 116 BGHZ 359, 376 (Ger.) (declaring restrictions that are disproportionate to the objective of retaining a sound liquidity base for the company null and void). In the literature, see Barbara Dauner-Lieb, *Angemessenheitskontrolle privatautonomer Selbstbindung des Gesellschafters?*, 86 ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR GESELLSCHAFTS-, UNTERNEHMENS- UND STEUERRECHT GMBHR 836 (1994) (describing the underlying general principle).

⁶²⁶ For references to the relevant case law, see *supra* note 306.

⁶²⁷ As to the directors' duty of loyalty under German corporate law and the regime defining directors' liability under Italian corporate law, see *supra* text preceding notes 407–409 and 595.

⁶²⁸ See *supra* text preceding note 476 for German corporate law and note 483 for Italian corporate law.

⁶²⁹ As to Germany, see note 314 and text accompanying note 590. As to Italy, see *supra* note 96.

⁶³⁰ German corporate law requires a supermajority vote. As to the AG, see §§ 179a para. 1, 179 *AktG* (Ger.). Courts extend this regime also to those potentially elusive scenarios in which the company sells all but its insignificant assets. See RG, May 13, 1929, 124 RGZ 279, 294 f. (Ger.); BGH, Feb. 25, 1982, 83 BGHZ 122, 128 (Ger.). Finally, case law has also established an unwritten competency for significant transactions involving more than 80% of the AG's assets. RG, May 13, 1929, 124 RGZ 279, 294 f. (Ger.); BGH, Feb. 25, 1982, 83 BGHZ 122, 128 (Ger.). A similar regime governs these transactions in GmbHs, because a shareholder meeting must "be convened where it appears necessary in the company's interest" (§ 49 para. 2 *GmbHG* (Ger.)). Courts have drawn on this provision to require shareholder approval before directors initiate the sale of all the company's assets. See, e.g., BGH, Jan. 8, 2019, 220 BGHZ 354 (Ger.). Italian blackletter corporate law does not mandate the vote of shareholders on a sale of substantially all assets of SPAs. Yet, scholars argue that such transactions do require shareholder approval, because they are apt to strike a fatal blow to the very existence of the firm and, thus, naturally fall within the "primordial" competencies of the shareholder meeting. See Giuseppe B. Portale, *supra* note 84, at 142. Other scholars reach the same conclusion in different ways. See, e.g., Pietro Abbadessa & Aurelio Mirone, *Le competenze dell'assemblea nelle s.p.a.*, 55 RIVISTA DELLE SOCIETÀ 270, 277 (2010). Italian courts support these conclusions by constantly stressing that directors' function and role cannot go beyond the actions required to implement the company's business object. See, e.g., Cass., 3 Mar. 2010, No. 5152 (It.) (stressing that "the powers of a director are limited to those falling within the company's business object"). As a matter of fact, such transactions are routinely subject to prior approval by the shareholder meeting. Blackletter corporate law does not stipulate explicitly any such requirements for SRLs. It nonetheless provides that directors are responsible for managing the firm, and shareholders must decide on any transaction that causes any significant change in the company's business object. See artt. 2475-bis, 2479, commi 2 and 5, *codice civile* (It.). Case law has regularly concluded that a sale of substantially all assets executed without shareholder approval is voidable. See, e.g., Trib. Roma, 27 Jan. 2020 (It.).

⁶³¹ As to controlling shareholders' duty of loyalty under German corporate laws, see, also for references, *supra* note 407. For its application in the context of trade sales, see generally *supra* note 589.

extent, under Italian corporate law.⁶³² These protections cannot be substantially customized or waived altogether, as previously discussed.⁶³³

To conclude, German and Italian corporate laws prevent parties from insulating trade sales from litigation risk and streamlining the divestment process: transplanting U.S.-style arrangements is certainly off-limits and devising alternative arrangements would only lead to inferior solutions, if any were available at all.

ii. Redemption Rights

U.S. VC contracts grant VCFs so-called redemption rights, that is, the right to sell their shares back to the firm, some years after the original investment, at a price reflecting the value of their liquidation preferences—the original issue price or a multiple thereof, plus any unpaid dividends.⁶³⁴ Standard arrangements, to be found in the charter, stipulate that redemption will occur if a specified percentage of convertible preferred shareholders so resolves,⁶³⁵ and the firm's legally available funds allow for a share buyback.⁶³⁶ These arrangements also govern so-called vampire scenarios: if the VC-backed firm's funds are insufficient to redeem all the VCF's shares, the firm must buy as many shares as its financial conditions permit, and, as more funds become legally available, any remaining shares until the VCF is fully divested.⁶³⁷ These arrangements benefit from the support of other charter clauses enabling the VCF to secure board control and to initiate actions that produce the cash required to liquidate the VCF's shares, such as prompting the sale of the firm's crown jewels.⁶³⁸

Redemption rights provisions serve three key functions. First, they provide VCFs with an easy-to-activate downside protection in case the VC-backed firm underperforms.⁶³⁹ Second, they offer VCFs a route for an exit from portfolio companies that they do not want to stay invested in but can neither go public nor find a buyer.⁶⁴⁰ Third, and most importantly, they give VCFs leverage vis-à-vis the entrepreneur: by threatening their exercise—which would drive the VC-backed firm into bankruptcy—they can discipline the entrepreneur, particularly in the run-up to a trade sale.⁶⁴¹ Hence, by reducing the likelihood of entrepreneurs' defection and

⁶³² Under German law, the appraisal remedy is only available in the enumerated cases. See Gesetz über das gesellschaftsrechtliche Spruchverfahren (Spruchverfahrensgesetz – SpruchG) [Appraisal Proceedings Act], June 12, 2003, BGBl. I at 838, § 1 no. 5 (Ger.). Asset sales do not trigger appraisal. However, courts may void the essential shareholder resolution on the grounds that the purchase price was inadequate, that one shareholder pursued special advantages, and that, therefore, the votes cast in favor of the transaction violated shareholders' fiduciary duties. See, e.g., BGH, Oct. 9, 2006, 169 BGHZ 221, 228 (Ger.). Consequently, disgruntled entrepreneurs can indirectly challenge the pricing in asset deals. In Italy, a sale of substantially all assets does not trigger shareholder withdrawal rights in SPAs, but it does in SRLs. To be sure, blackletter corporate law stipulates that, if a SRL undertakes any transactions that causes a substantial change of its business object as determined in the firm's charter, then any shareholder who has not voted in favor can withdraw from the company. See art. 2473, comma 1, *codice civile* (It.). Case law has repeatedly held that a sale of substantially all assets implies a substantial change of the company's object and thus triggers withdrawal rights. See, e.g., Trib. Roma, 11 November 2022 (It).

⁶³³ See *supra* text accompanying notes 592 and 607.

⁶³⁴ On liquidation preferences, see *supra* text accompanying notes 173–185. On automatic and cumulative dividends, see *supra* text accompanying notes 228–233.

⁶³⁵ MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 584.

⁶³⁶ *Id.*, at 579–580.

⁶³⁷ MAYNARD & WARREN, *supra* note 101, at 586–87.

⁶³⁸ *Id.*, at 595 (explaining that the failure of the portfolio company to redeem the VCF's shares is a default event enabling the VCF to appoint additional directors, as discussed *supra* note 399 and corresponding text).

⁶³⁹ See Gilson, *supra* note 5, at 1075.

⁶⁴⁰ See PEARCE & BARNES, *supra* note 101, at 45 (defining these provisions as granting a “drop-dead right to be bought out, should the VC still be stuck in an investment after a defined period.”).

⁶⁴¹ Gilson, *supra* note 5, 1075.

opportunism, they mitigate moral hazard at crucial junctures of the business relationship and, indirectly, foster the effective implementation of the contract and the fulfillment of its promises.⁶⁴²

German and Italian corporate laws do not allow for redemption rights *à la* Delaware.

German corporate law allows AGs to redeem shares either in events pre-specified in the charter or in a voluntary acquisition of the shares by the company.⁶⁴³ Only in the latter case is a pre-specification of events triggering redemption not required,⁶⁴⁴ the underlying rationale being that the redemption is underpinned by a voluntary at-arm's-length tender of the redeemed shares. Yet, the redemption still requires an ad hoc supermajority shareholder resolution.⁶⁴⁵ This non-waivable⁶⁴⁶ precondition implies that the entrepreneur's consent is necessary for the redemption to proceed. Moreover, such redemption requires a prior share buyback and, therefore, the relevant regime protecting creditors' interests also applies. Accordingly, the VC-backed firm is allowed to buy no more than 10% of its shares unless it concomitantly reduces its share capital (though not below the statutory minimum, of course).⁶⁴⁷ Such a share capital reduction, in turn, also requires a supermajority shareholder vote.⁶⁴⁸ Hence, to make sure that the required supermajority will not be of obstacle to having their shares redeemed, VCFs will need to enter into shareholder agreements granting them control over the entrepreneur's voting behavior.⁶⁴⁹ Yet, such shareholder agreements do not suspend shareholders' fiduciary duties, implying that the entrepreneur may litigate a shareholder resolution redeeming and/or reducing the share capital for the sole benefit of the VCF and have it invalidated.⁶⁵⁰ All in all, buybacks are unviable to serve VCFs' redemption interests.⁶⁵¹

The regime for GmbHs is relatively more permissive. In addition to generally permitting redemptions in voluntary share buybacks,⁶⁵² it also gives more leeway to execute such repurchases, for instance by allowing GmbHs' charters to empower directors with the authority to decide on the redemption.⁶⁵³ Yet, it also imposes constraints on the exercise of these rights. The regime for capital maintenance, for one, may stand in the way of a share buyback by requiring that the expenditures be paid from unappropriated retained earnings.⁶⁵⁴ Therefore, particularly in an unprofitable venture, redemptions will often necessitate a capital reduction

⁶⁴² *Id.*

⁶⁴³ See § 237 para.1 *AktG* (Ger.).

⁶⁴⁴ For the demanding pre-specification requirements that apply in compulsory redemptions and that thwart U.S.-style redemption rights, see *supra* III.C.2.vi.

⁶⁴⁵ See §§ 222 para. 1, 237 para. 2 sentence 1 *AktG* (Ger.) (requiring a "majority amounting to at least three quarters of the share capital represented").

⁶⁴⁶ Rolf Sethe, § 237, in 7.1 GROBKOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, para. 60 (Klaus J. Hopt & Herbert Wiedemann eds., 4th ed. 2012). See also Marcus Lutter, § 237, in 4 KÖLNER KOMMENTAR ZUM AKTG, para. 44 (Ulrich Noack & Wolfgang Zöllner eds., 3d ed. 2019).

⁶⁴⁷ See § 71 para. 1, No. 6, 8 *AktG* (Ger.) (stipulating that the general meeting cannot authorize share buybacks exceeding 10 per cent of the company's share capital, unless it resolves on a share capital reduction).

⁶⁴⁸ See §§ 222 para. 1, 237 para. 2, sentence 1 *AktG* (Ger.).

⁶⁴⁹ KUNTZ, *supra* note 14, at 746.

⁶⁵⁰ See *supra* notes 407 and 343.

⁶⁵¹ See also Baums & Möller, *supra* note 12, at 60.

⁶⁵² See § 34 para.1 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (restricting only compulsory redemptions).

⁶⁵³ The delegation is not explicitly foreseen in the relevant statute. However, the majority scholars applies the general regime (as laid down in § 45 para. 2 *GmbHG* (Ger.)) also to the general meetings' default competence for redemptions and permits delegations in the company's charter on these grounds. See, e.g., Harm Peter Westermann & Christoph Seibt, § 34, in 1 SCHOLZ GMBHG, para. 41 (13th ed. 2022).

⁶⁵⁴ § 33 para. 2 sentence 1 *GmbHG* (Ger.) (specifying that payouts must not reduce the share capital or utilize reserves to be formed in accordance with the firm's charter).

in the GmbH as well, which raises the same concerns previously outlined for the AG due to the mandatory requirement of a shareholder vote.⁶⁵⁵

Italian corporate law does not allow for redemption right provisions *à la* Delaware either. Unlike the regime for SPAs, under which corporate charters may grant shareholders the right to sell their shares back to the company,⁶⁵⁶ the regime governing SRLs, including for SME SRLs, explicitly forbids share buybacks,⁶⁵⁷ thereby ruling out the viability of any arrangement granting the VCF redemption rights. Yet, the inclusion of redemption rights in SPAs' charters would be another means to insulate the VCF from the firm's losses, contravening the prohibition against *societas leonina* and thus proving null and void.⁶⁵⁸ Even assuming that the prohibition against *societas leonina* does not come in the way, redemption requires a share buyback that the VC-backed firm can plausibly implement only subject to the cumbersome rules and limitations for such a transaction,⁶⁵⁹ as practitioners have stressed.⁶⁶⁰ Moreover, the exact boundaries of private ordering in this area are blurred to say the least.⁶⁶¹

Needless to say, the regulatory obstacles that stand in the way of transplanting U.S.-style redemption rights arrangements also rule out the viability of the complementary arrangements governing the vampire scenario.⁶⁶²

To obviate the German corporate law constraints, charters grant the VCF the right to sell back its shares to the firm at the price of one euro.⁶⁶³ These arrangements can play no role in disciplining the entrepreneur.⁶⁶⁴ Indeed, if the VCF's equity is worth more than 1 euro, the VCF's decision to exercise their redemption right would result in a windfall for the entrepreneur. Such arrangements may be defended on the grounds that their function is not to protect against downside risk. Rather, they prevent the prolonged participation in poorly performing portfolio companies, because being "stuck" in such firms may entail significant opportunity costs and potentially also negative reputational consequences, a rationale that also

⁶⁵⁵ See *supra* text following note 645. Note that scholars qualify the capital reduction as an amendment to the firm's charter that falls within the exclusive remit of shareholders. Joachim Tebben, § 58, in 3 SCHOLZ GMBHG, paras. 2 and 31 (13th ed. 2025).

⁶⁵⁶ Such arrangements are not explicitly covered by the regime on redeemable shares. See *supra* text preceding note 536. Yet, building on scholarly work that deems them viable, some practitioners defend the validity of these arrangements, at least in principle. See Consiglio Notarile dei Distretti Riuniti di Firenze Pistoia e Prato, *Massima No. 67/2018 "Azioni riscattande, prezzo di vendita e patto leonino,"* <https://www.consiglionotarilefirenze.it/index.php/orientamenti/societa-di-capitali/azioni-e-quote/240-azioni-riscattande-prezzo-di-vendita-e-patto-leonino-67-2018.html>. Regulatory uncertainty is, however, pronounced on this matter. See *infra* note 661.

⁶⁵⁷ See *supra* text accompanying note 77.

⁶⁵⁸ Even scholars who take a more liberal approach and attempt to defend the validity of redemption rights cannot help but cast doubts over the validity of arrangements contemplating price-setting provisos shifting the consequences of firm underperformance from one shareholder to another, making the beneficiary look insulated from the firm's downside risk. See, e.g., GIORGIO MARASÀ & NICOLETTA CIOCCA, RECESSO E RISCATTO NELLE S.P.A. COMMENTO AGLI ARTICOLI 2437–2437-SEXIES C.C. 41 (2011).

⁶⁵⁹ See *supra* text accompanying notes 540–541.

⁶⁶⁰ Consiglio Notarile dei Distretti Riuniti di Firenze Pistoia e Prato, *Massima No. 67/2018*, *supra* note 656.

⁶⁶¹ Scholars and practitioners debate crucial details of these arrangements, such as whether the right to sell can be vis-à-vis the company and other shareholders or vis-à-vis the latter only, whether the redemption right must be exercised within a specific timeframe, and whether legal restrictions exist on the redemption price. Compare Consigli Notarili di Roma e di Firenze, *supra* note 656, with Consiglio Notarili Riuniti di Roma, Velletri e Civitavecchia, *Massima No. 5 "Azioni riscattande" - July 2016*, <https://www.edotto.com/download/consiglio-notarile-di-roma-massime-societarie-luglio-2016>.

⁶⁶² See *supra* text accompanying note 637.

⁶⁶³ Wolfgang Weitnauer, *Teil H – Exit*, in HANDBUCH, *supra* note 15, at para. 20.

⁶⁶⁴ See *supra* text preceding note 641.

buttresses U.S. redemption rights. However, an alternative arrangement that serves only one of the three functions of the U.S. corresponding clause is obviously inferior.⁶⁶⁵

Alternative arrangements like those that are commonplace in German VC deals are also known in Italian VC deals.⁶⁶⁶ But the solution of choice are provisions in shareholder agreements granting the VCF the right to sell shares to the entrepreneur—rather than to the firm. These arrangements grant VCFs leverage to threaten entrepreneurs with transactions that could trigger personal bankruptcy, creating powerful incentive effects.⁶⁶⁷ Hence, they might seem to be even more effective than U.S. redemption rights.⁶⁶⁸ Yet, these alternative arrangements suffer from two severe limitations. Even if courts retained their more recent stance on the validity of redemption rights included in shareholder agreements,⁶⁶⁹ the VCF could not rely on the self-enforcing tools that come with board control, which can only be established through redemption rights included in the firm’s charter.⁶⁷⁰ Further, the VCF intending to enforce its redemption right would have to start a lengthy judicial proceeding against a likely cash-constrained entrepreneur—with the prospect of facing significant costs without realizing much, if anything at all. In other words, mounting a credible threat carries a significant price tag for the VCF.

To conclude, the alternative arrangements that typically appear in German and Italian VC deals fail to perform all the functions of U.S. redemption rights arrangements and/or are less effective in performing the ones they do serve. Perhaps most importantly, at least in Germany, they are by design unfit to serve as disciplining tools.

IV. CONCLUSION

The success of the U.S. VC industry also builds on the flexibility of Delaware corporate law. This legal regime allows VCFs and entrepreneurs to craft a contractual framework that effectively addresses the problems of uncertainty, moral hazard, and information asymmetries

⁶⁶⁵ On these functions, see *supra* text accompanying notes 639-642.

⁶⁶⁶ Gardina & Pairona, *supra* note 15, at 435 (suggesting that, under Italian corporate law, *in lieu* of redemption right provisions, the charter could grant the VCF a put option at a “symbolic price” to enable VCFs to “clean its financial statements from the participation held in the start-up.”).

⁶⁶⁷ See Ryan McMorro, Wenjie Ding, & Nian Liu, *Chinese Venture Capitalists Forced Failed Founders on to Debtor Blacklist*, *Financial Times*, Jan. 5, 2025, <https://www.ft.com/content/38f1e51b-83b8-45cb-9cbf-2bc63f18e6ce>. For a discussion of how forcing the entrepreneur into personal bankruptcy affects their incentives to start a business and ultimately reduces the demand for VC see John Armour, *Personal Insolvency Law and the Demand for Venture Capital*, 5 EUR. BUS. ORG. L. REV. 87 (2004).

⁶⁶⁸ See *supra* text accompanying note 641.

⁶⁶⁹ Courts, with the generalized support of scholars, have in the past tended to consider these alternative arrangements as instrumental to insulating the shareholder from bearing the firm’s losses and thus as in violation of the prohibition against *societas leonina*. On the prohibition against *societas leonina*, see *supra* text following note 155. An abundant case law spanning more than three decades considered provisions granting one shareholder a redemption right toward another shareholder null and void. See, e.g., Cass., 29 Oct. 1994, No. 8927 (It.); Trib. Milano, 30 Dec. 2011; and Trib. Milano, 23 July 2020 (It.). Scholars have been supportive of these rulings by regularly arguing that this regime applies irrespective of whether a shareholder has a redemption right towards the firm or another shareholder. See, e.g., Marasà & Ciocca, *supra* note 658, at 41. More recent rulings tend to acknowledge their validity. See Cass., 4 July 2018, No. 17498; Tribunale di Bologna [Bologna Court], 15 May 2023 (It.); and Trib. Milano, 8 May 2023 (It.).

⁶⁷⁰ See *supra* text accompanying note 638.

typical of their relationship and braids the contract the VCF enters with the entrepreneur, on the one hand, with the one it enters with its investors, on the other.⁶⁷¹

In this article, we have investigated whether VCFs and entrepreneurs bargaining under German and Italian corporate laws can transplant U.S. VC contracts into their local deals—whether by replicating *verbatim* the contractual arrangements used in the U.S. or by resorting to other arrangements that, although possibly different in their design, may achieve the same allocation of cash-flow and control rights. We conclude that those VCFs and entrepreneurs cannot. German and Italian corporate laws exhibit an *über*-mandatory structure.⁶⁷² They look like a labyrinth of prescriptions. This maze only occasionally originates from E.U. mandatory corporate law. Instead, it nearly always stems from national corporate laws. Notably, the relevant restrictions originate much less frequently from blackletter corporate law than from the various rules and standards that scholars elaborate. The resulting regulatory constraints rarely come in the form of absolute prohibitions that prevent VCFs and entrepreneurs from adopting any arrangement apt to tackle a specific governance challenge. Rather, they mostly come in the form of relative prohibitions that allow for alternative arrangements. These arrangements are, however, inferior to those used in U.S. VC deals, leading to a functionality gap in the contractual technology available to VCFs and entrepreneurs. As pointed out in a companion paper,⁶⁷³ this may, at the margin, have an impact on VC-backed firms' cost of capital and, ultimately, on the vibrancy of the VC market and its ability to support innovation and growth. This finding holds several critical lessons for policymakers, which we present in another companion paper.⁶⁷⁴

⁶⁷¹ See *supra* text accompanying notes 103–104.

⁶⁷² See *supra*, text accompanying note 22.

⁶⁷³ Enriques et al., *supra* note 18.

⁶⁷⁴ Enriques et al., *supra* note 21.

About ECGI

ECGI is an international non-profit membership organisation that provides a platform for debate and dialogue among academics, policymakers, and business leaders, with a focus on major corporate governance, ESG, and stewardship issues.

The views expressed in this working paper are those of the authors, not those of the ECGI or its members.

www.ecgi.global

ECGI Working Paper Series in Law

Editorial Board

Editor

Amir Licht, Professor of Law, Harry Radzyner Law School, Reichman University

Consulting Editors

Hse-Yu Iris Chiu, Professor of Corporate Law and Financial, Regulation, University College London

Martin Gelter, Professor of Law, Fordham University School of Law

Geneviève Helleringer, Professor of Law, ESCP and Oxford Law Faculty

Kathryn Judge, Professor of Law, Columbia Law School

Wolf-Georg Ringe, Professor of Law & Finance, University of Hamburg

Series Manager

Asif Malik, ECGI Working Paper Series Manager

<https://www.ecgi.global/publications/working-papers>